

# Scientific Support for the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool



Army Corps of  
Engineers



## **Scientific Support for the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool (Version 1.0)**

July 2020

### **Lead Agencies:**

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Albuquerque District, Pueblo Regulatory Office  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Omaha District, Denver Regulatory Office  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Sacramento District, Grand Junction Regulatory Office

### **Contractors:**

Stream Mechanics  
Ecosystem Planning and Restoration

### **Contributing Agencies:**

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
Colorado Department of Public Health and the Environment  
Colorado Water Conservation Board

**Citation:** U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2020. Scientific Support for the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool. Version 1.0. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Albuquerque District, Pueblo Regulatory Office.

## Acknowledgments

The scientific support for the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool (CSQT) was developed to provide the technical basis for the reference curves included in the CSQT. This document is adapted for Colorado from the Scientific Support for the Wyoming Stream Quantification Tool (USACE 2018a) developed by the Wyoming Stream Technical Team, whose members include Will Harman, Cidney Jones, Julia McCarthy, Paul Dey, Jeremy Zumberge, and Paige Wolken.

The CSQT is the collaborative result of federal and state agency representatives, collectively referred to as the CSQT steering (advisory) committee (CSQT SC). The development of the CSQT and supporting documents for Colorado was funded by USEPA Region 8, USEPA Headquarters and USACE Albuquerque through a contract with Ecosystem Planning and Restoration and Stream Mechanics (contract # EP-C-17-001). Steering (advisory) committee members include:

Julia McCarthy, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 8  
Kelly Allan, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Albuquerque District  
Allan Steinle, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Albuquerque District  
Aaron Eilers, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Omaha District  
Matt Montgomery, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Omaha District  
Joshua Carpenter, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Albuquerque District  
Travis Morse, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Sacramento District  
Eric Richer, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
David Graf, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
Matt Kondratieff, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
Mindi May, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
Pete Cadmus, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
George Schisler, Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
Scott Garncarz, Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment  
Chris Sturm, Colorado Water Conservation Board

Many others provided valuable contributions to the Colorado and Wyoming documents, including: Will Harman (Stream Mechanics) and Cidney Jones (EPR) who provided technical support; Andy Treble and Jay Skinner (CPW) who provided input on fish metrics and assemblage data; Kiel Downing (USACE Omaha/Albuquerque District), Karlyn Armstrong (CPW), and Jack Lander (CWCB) who provided valuable review and comment; Mike Robertson and other Aquatic Staff with Wyoming Game and Fish Department who assisted with data collection and provided input on fish metrics; Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division staff who assisted with data collection; Barbara Chongtoua with the Urban Drainage and Flood Control District (also known as the Mile High Flood Control District) who provided important context within urban environments; and Sara Donatich, LeeAnne Lutz, and Amy James (EPR). Valuable peer review on the CSQT Beta Version and supporting documentation was provided by Sarah Miller (USACE ERDC). This document also benefited from others who provided feedback and comment on the CSQT Beta Version through the Public Notice issued by the Colorado Regulatory Offices.

## Table of Contents

<b>Acronyms .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Glossary of Terms .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Chapter 1. Background and Introduction .....</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1 Background on the Stream Functions Pyramid Framework (SFPP).....	6
1.2 Background on the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool .....	7
1.3 Catchment Context.....	9
1.4 Development of Reference Curves .....	10
1.5 Calculating Reach-Scale Condition Scores .....	12
1.6 Calculating Functional Feet .....	14
1.7 Function-Based Parameters.....	17
1.8 Data Sources, Data Gaps, and Limitations .....	19
1.9 Revisions to the CSQT and Reference Curves .....	24
<b>Chapter 2. Flow Alteration Module .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Chapter 3. Reach Runoff Parameter .....</b>	<b>33</b>
3.1 Land Use Coefficient .....	34
3.2 Concentrated Flow Points .....	37
<b>Chapter 4. Baseflow Dynamics Parameter .....</b>	<b>40</b>
4.1 Average Velocity .....	41
4.2 Average Depth .....	41
<b>Chapter 5. Floodplain Connectivity Parameter .....</b>	<b>44</b>
5.1 Bank Height Ratio.....	45
5.2 Entrenchment Ratio.....	49
5.3 Percent Side Channels.....	55
<b>Chapter 6. Large Woody Debris Parameter .....</b>	<b>58</b>
6.1 Large Woody Debris Index (LWDI).....	59
6.2 Number of Large Wood Pieces per 328 feet (100 meters).....	61
<b>Chapter 7. Lateral Migration Parameter .....</b>	<b>66</b>
7.1 Greenline Stability Rating .....	67
7.2 Dominant BEHI/NBS .....	69

---

7.3	Percent Streambank Erosion.....	72
7.4	Percent Armoring.....	75
<b>Chapter 8. Bed Material Characterization Parameter .....</b>		<b>77</b>
<b>Chapter 9. Bed Form Diversity Parameter .....</b>		<b>79</b>
9.1	Pool Spacing Ratio .....	80
9.2	Pool Depth Ratio .....	88
9.3	Percent Riffle .....	91
9.4	Aggradation Ratio.....	95
<b>Chapter 10. Riparian Vegetation Parameter .....</b>		<b>98</b>
10.1	Riparian Extent.....	99
10.2	Woody Vegetation Cover.....	103
10.3	Herbaceous Vegetation Cover .....	110
10.4	Percent Native Cover .....	114
<b>Chapter 11. Temperature Parameter .....</b>		<b>118</b>
11.1	Daily Maximum Temperature .....	118
11.2	Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (MWAT).....	120
<b>Chapter 12. Dissolved Oxygen Parameter.....</b>		<b>124</b>
12.1	Dissolved Oxygen Concentration .....	124
<b>Chapter 13. Nutrients Parameter .....</b>		<b>129</b>
13.1	Chlorophyll $\alpha$ .....	129
<b>Chapter 14. Macroinvertebrates Parameter.....</b>		<b>135</b>
14.1	Colorado Multi-metric Index (CO MMI).....	135
<b>Chapter 15. Fish Parameter .....</b>		<b>139</b>
15.1	Native Fish Species Richness .....	140
15.2	Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN) Absent Score.....	142
15.3	Wild Trout Biomass .....	143
<b>Chapter 16. References Cited .....</b>		<b>149</b>
<b>Appendix A: CSQT List of Metrics .....</b>		<b>168</b>

## List of Figures

<b>Figure 1-1:</b>	Stream Functions Pyramid (Image from Harman et al. 2012)	7
<b>Figure 1-2:</b>	Stream Functions Pyramid Framework	7
<b>Figure 2-1:</b>	Flow Alteration Module Metrics Reference Curves	29
<b>Figure 3-1:</b>	Reference Curves for Land Use Coefficient	36
<b>Figure 3-2:</b>	Reference Curve for Concentrated Flow Points	38
<b>Figure 4-1:</b>	Reference Curves for Average Depth	43
<b>Figure 5-1:</b>	Bank Height Ratio Reference Curve	48
<b>Figure 5-2:</b>	Box Plots for ER from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset	51
<b>Figure 5-3a:</b>	Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves	53
<b>Figure 5-3b:</b>	Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves	53
<b>Figure 5-3c:</b>	Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves	54
<b>Figure 5-3d:</b>	Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves	54
<b>Figure 5-4:</b>	Percent Side Channels Reference Curves	57
<b>Figure 6-1:</b>	LWDI Reference Curves	61
<b>Figure 6-2:</b>	Box Plots for Number of LWD Pieces from the NRSA Dataset	63
<b>Figure 6-3:</b>	Number of LWD Pieces Reference Curves	65
<b>Figure 7-1:</b>	Greenline Stability Rating Reference Curve	68
<b>Figure 7-2:</b>	Percent Streambank Erosion Reference Curves	73
<b>Figure 7-3:</b>	Percent Armoring Reference Curve	76
<b>Figure 9-1:</b>	Box Plots for Pool Spacing Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset	82
<b>Figure 9-2a:</b>	Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves	85
<b>Figure 9-2b:</b>	Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves	86
<b>Figure 9-2c:</b>	Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves	86
<b>Figure 9-2d:</b>	Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves	87
<b>Figure 9-2e:</b>	Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves	87
<b>Figure 9-3:</b>	Box Plots for Pool Depth Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset	89
<b>Figure 9-4:</b>	Pool Depth Ratio Reference Curves	90
<b>Figure 9-5a:</b>	Percent Riffle Reference Curves	94
<b>Figure 9-5b:</b>	Percent Riffle Reference Curves	94
<b>Figure 9-6:</b>	Aggradation Ratio Reference Curve	97
<b>Figure 10-1:</b>	Riparian Width Reference Curves	102
<b>Figure 10-2:</b>	Woody Vegetation Cover for the Mountain and Basin ecoregions from the CNHP Dataset	105
<b>Figure 10-3:</b>	Box plots for Woody Vegetation Cover for the Plains ecoregions from the CNHP Dataset	105
<b>Figure 10-4a:</b>	Woody Vegetation Cover Reference Curves	108
<b>Figure 10-4b:</b>	Woody Vegetation Cover Reference Curves	109
<b>Figure 10-5:</b>	Box Plots for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset	112
<b>Figure 10-6:</b>	Herbaceous Vegetation Cover Reference Curves	113
<b>Figure 10-7:</b>	Box Plots for Percent Native Cover from the CNHP Dataset	115
<b>Figure 10-8:</b>	Percent Native Cover Reference Curves	117
<b>Figure 11-1:</b>	Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (°C) Reference Curves	123

---

<b>Figure 12-1:</b>	Dissolved Oxygen Concentration Reference Curve .....	128
<b>Figure 13-1:</b>	Histogram of Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Concentrations (mg/m <sup>2</sup> ) for Reference and Non-Reference Datasets from WY .....	130
<b>Figure 13-2:</b>	Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Reference Curves .....	134
<b>Figure 14-1:</b>	CO MMI Reference Curves .....	137
<b>Figure 15-1:</b>	Native Fish Species Richness Reference Curve.....	141
<b>Figure 15-2:</b>	Wild Trout Biomass Reference Curves .....	147

## List of Tables

<b>Table 1-1:</b>	Functional capacity definitions used to define threshold values and develop reference curves for the CSQT .....	11
<b>Table 1-2:</b>	Implicit parameter and metric weighting that results from averaging .....	13
<b>Table 1-3:</b>	Debit and credit approaches that consider a combination of condition and stream length. Adapted from ELI et al. (2016) with Wyoming added (USACE 2018d).....	16
<b>Table 1-4:</b>	A summary of the parameters included in Harman et al. (2012) and rationale for their inclusion or exclusion from the CSQT .....	18
<b>Table 1-5:</b>	EPA Level III Ecoregion Groupings Used for Data Analysis .....	21
<b>Table 1-6:</b>	Site Biotype Classification Rules (reproduced from Appendix A of CDPHE 2017).....	22
<b>Table 1-7:</b>	Applicability of metrics across flow type and in multi-thread systems. ....	23
<b>Table 2-1:</b>	Presumptive Flow Standard. Adapted from Richter et al. (2012) .....	28
<b>Table 2-2:</b>	Threshold Values for Flow Alteration Module Metrics (O/E).....	28
<b>Table 2-3:</b>	USGS Gage Station IDs for Flow Alteration Module Case Studies.....	29
<b>Table 2-4:</b>	Flow Alteration Module Case Study .....	30
<b>Table 3-1:</b>	Land use descriptors and coefficients.....	35
<b>Table 3-2:</b>	Threshold Values for Land Use Coefficients .....	35
<b>Table 3-3:</b>	Threshold Values for Concentrated Flow Points .....	38
<b>Table 4-1:</b>	Minimum Flow Requirements Over Riffles (Nehring 1979) .....	41
<b>Table 4-2:</b>	Threshold Values for Average Depth .....	42
<b>Table 5-1:</b>	Bank Height Ratio Categories .....	46
<b>Table 5-2:</b>	Statistics for BHR from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset.....	46
<b>Table 5-3:</b>	Threshold Values for Bank Height Ratio .....	47
<b>Table 5-4:</b>	Entrenchment Ratio Performance Standards from Harman et al. (2012).....	50
<b>Table 5-5:</b>	Statistics for ER from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset .....	50
<b>Table 5-6:</b>	Threshold Values for Entrenchment Ratio .....	52
<b>Table 5-7:</b>	Threshold Values for Side Channels Metric from the Oregon SFAM (Nadeau et al. 2018).....	56
<b>Table 5-8:</b>	Threshold Values for Percent Side Channels .....	56
<b>Table 6-1:</b>	Statistics for LWDI from Reference Sites. All values are per 328 feet (100 meters) of stream .....	59
<b>Table 6-2:</b>	Threshold Values for the LWDI (per 328 feet or 100 meters).....	60
<b>Table 6-3:</b>	Statistics for Number of LWD Pieces from the NRSA Dataset.....	63
<b>Table 6-4:</b>	Threshold Values for the Number of LWD Pieces per 100 meters.....	64
<b>Table 7-1:</b>	Greenline Stability Rating and Functional Capacity .....	68
<b>Table 7-2:</b>	Greenline Stability Rating at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT.....	69
<b>Table 7-3:</b>	Dominant BEHI/NBS stability ratings provided in Rosgen (2008) .....	73
<b>Table 7-4:</b>	Index Values for Dominant BEHI/NBS .....	71
<b>Table 7-5:</b>	BEHI/NBS stability ratings that represent actively eroding and non-eroding banks.....	72
<b>Table 7-6:</b>	Threshold Values for Percent Streambank Erosion .....	73
<b>Table 7-7:</b>	Threshold Values for Percent Armoring .....	76
<b>Table 9-1:</b>	Statistics for Pool Spacing Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset...	82
<b>Table 9-2:</b>	Threshold Values for Pool Spacing Ratio.....	83

<b>Table 9-3:</b>	Statistics for Pool Depth Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset .....	90
<b>Table 9-4:</b>	Threshold Values for Pool Depth Ratio .....	90
<b>Table 9-5:</b>	Statistics for Percent Riffle from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset.....	93
<b>Table 9-6:</b>	Threshold Values for Percent Riffle.....	93
<b>Table 9-7:</b>	Width Depth Ratio State Categories (Rosgen 2014).....	96
<b>Table 9-8:</b>	Threshold Values for Aggradation Ratio .....	96
<b>Table 10-1:</b>	Threshold Values for Riparian Extent.....	102
<b>Table 10-2:</b>	Statistics for Woody Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset .....	104
<b>Table 10-3:</b>	Woody Vegetation Cover at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT .....	106
<b>Table 10-4:</b>	Threshold Values for Woody Vegetation Cover .....	108
<b>Table 10-5:</b>	Statistics for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset.....	111
<b>Table 10-6:</b>	Threshold Values for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover .....	112
<b>Table 10-7:</b>	Statistics for Percent Native Cover from the CNHP Dataset.....	114
<b>Table 10-8:</b>	Percent Native Cover at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT .....	116
<b>Table 10-9:</b>	Threshold Values for Percent Native Cover .....	116
<b>Table 11-1:</b>	DM Standards for Colorado Streams .....	119
<b>Table 11-2:</b>	Threshold Values for DM.....	119
<b>Table 11-3:</b>	MWAT Standards for Colorado Streams.....	121
<b>Table 11-4:</b>	Representative Species within each Temperature Tier.....	121
<b>Table 11-5:</b>	Optimum temperature based on species within each temperature tier for Colorado streams.....	122
<b>Table 11-6:</b>	Threshold Values for MWAT .....	122
<b>Table 12-1:</b>	Statistics for Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) from WQCD Dataset by Stream Condition .....	125
<b>Table 12-2:</b>	Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) that Support Aquatic Life (USEPA 1986).....	126
<b>Table 12-3:</b>	Statistics for Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) from WQCD Dataset.....	127
<b>Table 12-4:</b>	Threshold Values (mg/L) for Dissolved Oxygen Concentration.....	127
<b>Table 13-1:</b>	Statistics for Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Concentrations from the WDEQ Dataset.....	131
<b>Table 13-2:</b>	Statistics for Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Concentrations from the WQCD dataset .....	132
<b>Table 13-3:</b>	Threshold Values (mg/m <sup>2</sup> ) for Chlorophyll $\alpha$ by Biotype.....	133
<b>Table 14-1:</b>	CO MMI Aquatic Life Use Thresholds for each Biotype (CDPHE 2017) .....	136
<b>Table 14-2:</b>	Threshold Values for CO MMI Scores by Biotype.....	136
<b>Table 15-1:</b>	Threshold Values for Native Fish Species Richness.....	140
<b>Table 15-2:</b>	How to Determine the Field Value for SGCN Absent Score.....	142
<b>Table 15-3:</b>	Threshold Values for SGCN Absent Score .....	143
<b>Table 15-4:</b>	Mean empirical values for trout biomass averaged over habitat improvement projects sorted for WGFD stream class.....	146
<b>Table 15-5:</b>	Threshold Values for Wild Trout Biomass .....	146

## Version

<b><u>CSQT Version</u></b>	<b><u>Date finalized</u></b>	<b><u>Description</u></b>
CSQT Beta Version	May 2019	Original version
CSQT v1.0	July 2020	Various updates following public review and comment

## Acronyms

**BEHI/NBS** – Bank erosion hazard index / near-bank stress  
**BHR** – Bank height ratio  
**BKF** – Bankfull  
**CDPHE** – Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment  
**CFR** – Code of Federal Register  
**CNHP** – Colorado Natural Heritage Program (dataset)  
**CS** – Cold stream  
**CSQT** – Colorado Stream Quantification Tool (refers to both the CSQT workbook and Debit Calculator workbook)  
**CSQT SC** – Colorado Stream Quantification Tool steering (advisory) committee  
**Corps** – United States Army Corps of Engineers (also, USACE)  
**CPW** – Colorado Parks and Wildlife  
**CWA 404** – Section 404 of the Clean Water Act  
**DM** – Daily maximum temperature (°C)  
**DO** – Dissolved oxygen  
**ER** – Entrenchment ratio  
**FAM** – Flow alteration module  
**FF** – Functional feet  
**GSR** – Greenline stability rating  
**IHA** – Indicators of hydrologic alteration  
**HSI** – Habitat suitability indices  
**LWD** – Large woody debris  
**LWDI** – Large woody debris index  
**MMI** – Multi-metric index  
**MWAT** – Maximum weekly average temperature (°C)  
**NRCS** – Natural Resource Conservation Service  
**NRSA** – National Rivers and Streams Assessment (dataset)  
**O/E** – Ratio of observed/expected  
**Q** – Discharge, also stream flow or flow  
**SFPF** – Stream Function Pyramid Framework  
**SGCN** – Species of greatest conservation need  
**USACE** – United States Army Corps of Engineers (also, Corps)  
**USDOI** – United States Department of Interior  
**USEPA** – United States Environmental Protection Agency  
**USFWS** – United States Fish and Wildlife Service  
**W/D** – Width-to-depth ratio  
**WQCD** – Water Quality Control Division  
**WS** – Warm stream  
**WSQT** – Wyoming Stream Quantification Tool  
**WSTT** – Wyoming Stream Technical Team

## Glossary of Terms

Alluvial valley – Refer to definitions for confined alluvial valley and unconfined alluvial valley.

Affected stream length – Pertaining to the flow alteration module (FAM), the length of stream defined at the upstream end where impacts or flow protection would initiate, and at the downstream end by the location of the next water rights user, tributary junction, or terminus beyond which the flow modification has no material effect on SQT parameters.

Bankfull – Bankfull is a discharge that forms, maintains, and shapes the dimensions of the channel as it exists under the current climatic regime. The bankfull stage or elevation represents the break point between channel formation and floodplain processes (Wolman and Leopold 1957).

Bedrock valley – Valleys dominated by bedrock, typically exhibiting confined channels which lack an alluvial bed. Bedrock valleys are supply-limited; thus, sediment movements are primarily driven by the sediment load delivered to the reach via inflowing water. Two types of bedrock valleys have been classified: 1) steep bedrock valleys where transport capacity exceeds sediment supply, and 2) low-order streams dug to bedrock by debris flows (Montgomery and Buffington 1997).

Catchment – Land area draining to the downstream end of the project reach.

Colluvial or V-shaped valleys – Valley formed by the deposition of sediment from hillslope erosion processes. Colluvial valleys are bowl-shaped and typically confined by terraces or hillslopes. Colluvium is material that originates on the hillslopes and moves through mass wasting processes to the valley bottom where the material interacts with stream flow. These valleys are confined and support straighter, step-pool type channels (e.g., A, B, Bc, F). These valley types typically have a valley width ratio less than 7.0 and a meander width ratio (MWR) ratio less than 3. V-shaped valleys are often found in steep gradient headwater valleys.

Confined alluvial valley – Valley formed by the deposition of sediment from fluvial processes, typically confined by terraces or hillslopes that supports transitional stream types between step-pool and meandering or where meanders intercept hillslopes (e.g., C, Bc). These valley types typically have a valley width ratio less than 7.0 and a meander width ratio (MWR) between 3 and 4.

Colorado Stream Quantification Tool and Debit Calculator (CSQT) – The CSQT is a spreadsheet-based calculator that scores stream condition before and after restoration or impact activities to determine functional lift or loss, respectively, and can also be used to determine restoration potential, develop monitoring criteria and assist in other aspects of project planning. The CSQT is comprised of two workbooks, the CSQT and Debit Calculator. Because both are based on principles and concepts of the SFPF, they have some overlapping components. In addition, references to the CSQT can describe concepts that are applicable within both the CSQT and Debit Calculator workbooks.

Colorado Stream Quantification Tool Steering Committee (CSQT SC) – The group who worked on the development of the CSQT and contributed to various aspects of this document.

Compensatory mitigation - The restoration (re-establishment or rehabilitation), establishment (creation), enhancement and/or, in certain circumstances, preservation of aquatic resources for the purpose of offsetting unavoidable adverse impacts that remain after all appropriate and practicable avoidance and minimization has been achieved (33 CFR 332.2).

Condition – The relative ability of an aquatic resource to support and maintain a community of organisms having a species composition, diversity, and functional organization comparable to reference aquatic resources in the region. (33 CFR 332.2)

Condition score – Metric-based index values are averaged to characterize condition for each parameter, functional category, and overall project reach.

ECS = Existing Condition Score

PCS = Proposed Condition Score

Field value – A field measurement or calculation input into the CSQT for a specific metric. Units vary based on the metric or measurement method used.

Functional capacity – The degree to which an area of aquatic resource performs a specific function. (33 CFR 332.2)

Functions – The physical, chemical, and biological processes that occur in ecosystems. (33 CFR 332.2)

Functional category – The organizational levels of the stream functions pyramid: Hydrology, Hydraulics, Geomorphology, Physicochemical, and Biology. Each category is defined by a functional statement (Harman et al. 2012).

Functional feet (FF) – Functional feet is the primary unit for communicating functional lift and loss. The functional feet for a stream reach is calculated by multiplying an overall reach condition score by the stream reach length. The change in functional feet ( $\Delta FF$ ) is the difference between the Existing FF and the Proposed FF.

Functional lift – The difference in condition or functional feet before and after restoration or a permitted impact which results in improved function.

Functional loss – The difference in condition or functional feet before and after restoration or a permitted impact which results in less function.

Functional statement – A description of the functions within each functional category in the Stream Functions Pyramid Framework (Harman et al. 2012).

Function-based parameter – A structural measure which characterizes a condition at a point in time, or a process (expressed as a rate) that describes and supports the functional statement of each functional category (Harman et al. 2012).

Index values – Dimensionless values between 0.00 and 1.00 that express the relative condition of a metric field value compared with reference standards. These values are derived from reference curves for each metric. Index values are calculated for each metric and then combined to create parameter and functional category scores.

Measurement method – A specific tool, equation or assessment method used to inform a metric. Where a metric is informed by a single data collection method, metric and measurement method are used interchangeably (see Metric).

Metric – A specific tool, equation, measured values or assessment method used to evaluate the condition of a structural measure or function-based parameter. Some metrics can be derived from multiple measurement methods. Where a metric is informed by a single data collection method, metric and measurement method are used interchangeably (see Measurement Method).

Multi-thread channel – A multi-thread channel consists of at least 3 primary flow paths that are active at baseflow for most of the reach length.

Native Flow – For the purposes of the CSQT, native flows are the estimates of the stream flows that would result from natural hydrologic processes such as rainfall-runoff and snowmelt-runoff without any anthropogenic influence at a given location.

Performance standards – Observable or measurable physical (including hydrological), chemical, and/or biological attributes that are used to determine if a compensatory mitigation project meets its objectives. (33 CFR 332.2)

Project reach length – A homogeneous stream reach within the project area, i.e., a stream segment with similar valley morphology, stream type (Rosgen 1996), stability condition, riparian vegetation type, bed material composition, and level of anthropogenic influence. Multiple project reaches may exist in a project area where there are variations in stream physical characteristics and/or differences in project designs.

Reference aquatic resources – A set of aquatic resources that represent the full range of variability exhibited by a regional class of aquatic resources as a result of natural processes and anthropogenic disturbances. (33 CFR 332.1)

Reference curves – A relationship between observable or measurable metric field values and dimensionless index values. These curves are fitted to threshold values that represent the degree of departure from a reference standard for a given field value. These curves are used to calculate the index value for a given metric at a project site.

Reference standard – The subset of reference aquatic resources that are least disturbed and exhibit the highest level of functions. In the CSQT, this condition is considered functioning for the metric being assessed, and ranges from least disturbed to pristine condition.

Restoration potential – Restoration potential is the highest level of restoration that can be achieved based on an assessment of the contributing catchment, reach-scale constraints, and the results of the reach-scale function-based assessment (Harman et al. 2012).

Stream Functions Pyramid Framework (SFPF) – The Stream Functions Pyramid is comprised of five functional categories stratified based on the premise that lower-level functions support higher-level functions and that they are all influenced by local geology and climate. The SFPF includes the organization of function-based parameters, measurement methods, and performance standards to assess the functional categories of the Stream Functions Pyramid (Harman et al. 2012).

Threshold values – Criteria used to develop the reference curves and index values for each metric. These criteria differentiate between three condition categories: functioning, functioning-at-risk, and not-functioning and relate to the Performance Standards defined in Harman et al. (2012).

Wyoming Stream Quantification Tool (WSQT) – The WSQT is the Stream Quantification Tool that has been adapted and modified for use in Colorado (USACE 2018b).

Wyoming Stream Technical Team (WSTT) – The group who worked on the development of the WSQT v1.0 and associated documents.

## Chapter 1. Background and Introduction

The purpose of this document is to describe the scientific underpinnings of the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool and Debit Calculator (CSQT) and the rationale behind the reference curves. The CSQT is an application of the Stream Functions Pyramid Framework (SFPF), outlined in *A Function-Based Framework for Stream Assessment and Restoration Projects* (Harman et al. 2012). Harman et al. (2012) present the SFPF and the supporting references and rationale for the organizational framework and its components. The CSQT is one of several Stream Quantification Tools (SQTs) that have recently been developed for use in specific states, including Wyoming (WSQT; USACE 2018b), North Carolina (Harman and Jones 2017), Tennessee (TDEC 2018), Georgia (USACE 2018c), and Minnesota (MNSQT SC 2019).

This document is based on the Scientific Support for the WSQT v1.0 (USACE 2018a) and has been edited for Colorado with input from the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool Steering Committee (CSQT SC). The WSQT v1.0 served as the basis for the CSQT and many Chapters in this document are reproduced with minor edits from the Scientific Support for the WSQT v1.0 (USACE 2018a). Several modules, parameters, and metrics have been added to the CSQT that were not included in the WSQT v1.0, including the flow alteration module; baseflow dynamics and dissolved oxygen parameters; and side channels and daily maximum temperature metrics. The following were included in the WSQT v1.0 but reference curves have been revised for the CSQT using state-specific data: the maximum weekly average temperature metric, and the macroinvertebrates and fish parameters.

This document expands on the concepts presented in the SFPF and the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool and Debit Calculator (CSQT) User Manual (User Manual; CSQT SC 2020) to provide the scientific and technical rationale behind selection of the reference curves and metrics. Information on how to use the CSQT or collect data for use in the CSQT is not included in this document but can be found in the User Manual.

Section 1.1 provides a summary of the SFPF, including definitions of function-based parameters, metrics and reference curves.

Section 1.2 provides background for the CSQT and key considerations in applying the CSQT.

Section 1.3 provides a summary of the catchment context for determining restoration potential.

Section 1.4 provides a description of reference curve development and describes how key concepts of reference standard and functional capacity are used in the tool.

Section 1.5 gives an overview of how the CSQT calculates the overall reach condition score, along with weighting considerations.

Section 1.6 discusses the selection of functional feet as the primary unit for communicating functional lift and loss within the tool, and its use in informing debits and credits.

Section 1.7 provides the general criteria used to select function-based parameters and metrics from the SFPF and new metrics included in the CSQT.

Section 1.8 provides a general summary of the datasets used to develop reference curves and the tool's data gaps and limitations.

Section 1.9 provides information on the process for revising reference curves and metrics.

After the Introduction and Background, the remainder of the document is organized by function-based parameter. Each chapter consists of:

- A description of the parameter and why it was included, reasons for selecting metrics, and in some cases, why other metrics were not selected;
- A description of metrics used to characterize the parameter; and
- A description of how reference curves were developed and any associated stratifications, data gaps, and limitations.

### **1.1 Background on the Stream Functions Pyramid Framework (SFPF)**

In 2006, the Ecosystem Management and Restoration Research Program of the Corps noted that specific functions for stream and riparian corridors had yet to be defined in a manner that was generally agreed upon and could be used as a basis for management and policy decisions (Fischenich 2006). To address this need, an international committee of scientists, engineers, and practitioners defined 15 key stream and riparian zone functions aggregated into five categories: system dynamics, hydrologic balance, sediment processes and character, biological support, and chemical processes and pathways (see Table 1 in Fischenich 2006). The SFPF builds on the work completed by Fischenich (2006) by organizing stream functions into a conceptual hierarchical model for restoration practitioners to use in communication and the development of function-based assessments.

The SFPF organizes stream and riparian functions into five functional categories: Hydrology, Hydraulics, Geomorphology, Physicochemical, and Biology (Figure 1-1). This organization recognizes that foundational functions, like watershed hydrology and sediment transport processes, generally support higher-level functions like aquatic animal-life histories, and that all functions are influenced by local geology and climate. Cause and effect can flow from top to bottom as well, e.g., beavers (biology) can affect hydrology, and riparian communities can influence hydraulics and geomorphology through wood inputs, rooting depths, and floodplain roughness. However, the primary thought process for this framework is this: what supporting processes are needed to restore a function? With this perspective, the beaver example would change to: what functions are needed to support a healthy beaver population?

Within each of the five functional categories, the SFPF outlines parameters and methods to quantify the degree to which a stream ecosystem is functioning (Figure 1-2). In this framework, function-based parameters describe and support the functional statements of each functional category, and the measurement methods (metrics) are specific tools, equations, measured values and/or assessment methods that are used to quantify the function-based parameter. The SFPF presents two types of function-based parameters and metrics: structural indicators which describe a condition at a point in time and functions expressed as a rate that tie directly to a stream process (e.g., bank erosion rates). Each metric is compared against performance standards (reference curves) that represent departure from, or attainment of, reference standard. The selection of function-based parameters used in the CSQT and their relationship to reference standards are discussed in more detail in the following sections.

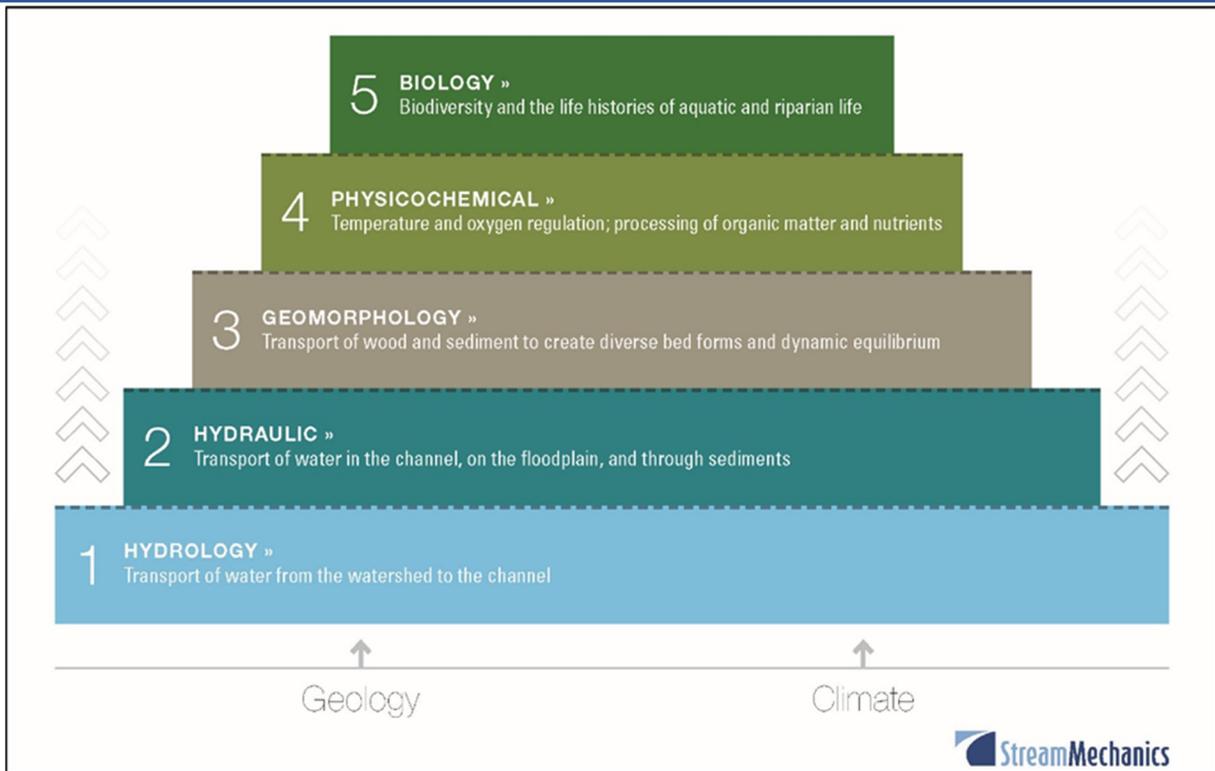


Figure 1-1: Stream Functions Pyramid (Image from Harman et al. 2012)

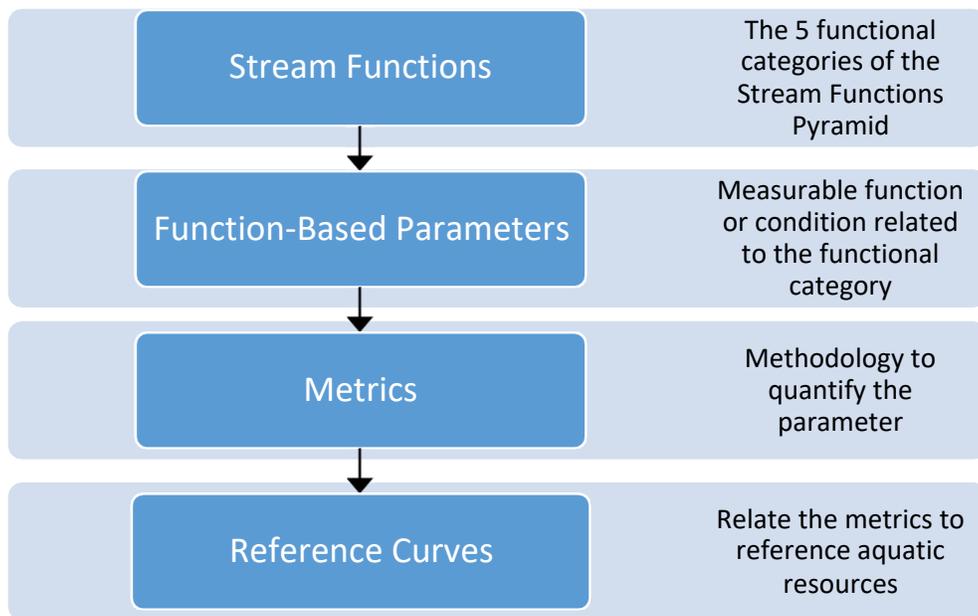


Figure 1-2: Stream Functions Pyramid Framework. Note: terms have been edited to match CSQT application.

## 1.2 Background on the Colorado Stream Quantification Tool

The SFPF has informed the development of the CSQT, a tool that consolidates the components of the SFPF into an excel workbook to characterize stream ecosystem functions at a specific project reach. The CSQT includes a sub-set of function-based parameters and metrics listed in

Harman et al. (2012) along with new parameters and metrics identified as part of the SQT development and regionalization process which are relevant to the stream systems found within the state of Colorado. The Tennessee, North Carolina and Minnesota SQTs calculate an overall reach score from the five functional categories presented in the SFPF, while the Georgia SQT calculates an overall reach score from three of the five (hydraulics, geomorphology and biology). The Colorado and Wyoming SQTs merge the original Hydrology and Hydraulics categories into a new combined category (referred to as the Reach Hydrology and Hydraulics Category), leading to an overall reach score calculated using four categories. This change to the Colorado and Wyoming SQTs was made due to the small number of parameters and metrics selected in both categories and the consequent disproportionate weighting those parameters were allocated. Differences among the SQTs is primarily due to decisions made during each state's regionalization process.

Metrics selected for the CSQT are structural or compositional attributes that indicate condition at a given point-in-time. Metrics serve as surrogates for stream functions (33 CFR 332.2) related to the function-based parameters selected for a given functional category. For example, bed form diversity is a partial surrogate for sediment transport processes, which is a geomorphology function. Bed form diversity is NOT a surrogate for macroinvertebrates or fish which are assessed in the biology functional category.

Assessment data are entered into the CSQT, where data for each metric are translated into index values via a set of reference curves, thus converting a variety of units into a standardized unitless score. Reference curves have been derived for each metric to relate site-specific data to degree of departure from reference standard. Index values range from 0.00 to 1.00 and relate to the functional capacity descriptions described in Section 1.4 below.

### ***Key Considerations***

The CSQT and this scientific support document have been developed primarily for use in the Clean Water Act Section 404 (CWA 404) program to meet the function-based approaches set forth in the 2008 Rule (USACE 2008a). Therefore, the following concepts are critical in understanding the applicability and limitations of this tool:

- The parameters and metrics in the tool were, in part, selected due to their sensitivity in responding to reach-scale changes associated with the types of activities commonly encountered in the CWA 404 program and commonly used in stream restoration. These parameters do not comprehensively characterize all structural measures or processes that occur within a stream.
- The CSQT is designed to assess the same metrics at a site pre- and post-activity to provide information on the degree to which the condition of the stream system changes following impacts or restoration activities. Unless the same parameters and metrics are used across all sites, it would not be appropriate to compare scores across sites.
- The CSQT itself does not score or quantify watershed condition. Watershed condition reflects the external elements that influence functions within a project reach and may affect project site selection or the restoration potential of a site (see Chapter 3).
- The CSQT is not a design tool. There may be more appropriate function-based parameters and analyses which are critical to a successful restoration design but sit outside of the scope of the CSQT. The CSQT instead measures the hydraulic, geomorphological, and ecological responses or outcomes related to a reach-scale project.

### **1.3 Catchment Context**

Understanding the processes that contribute to the condition at a project site is a critical component to any project. Anthropogenic impacts to stream processes can occur via direct and indirect pathways. Direct pathways include effects on reach-scale processes like channel modification, removal of riparian or aquatic vegetation, flow alteration, or introduction of non-native species. Indirect pathways often include alterations to catchment-scale processes, like land use changes, that occur away from the stream or are distributed throughout a catchment (Roni and Beechie 2013).

The focus of this tool is on the change to reach-scale ecological variables following a project, particularly indicators tied to direct pathways of anthropogenic modification using a reach-based approach. Because catchment condition is not likely to change following reach-scale activities, it is not included as part of the scoring within the tool itself. However, the catchment context is critical to understanding the reference condition, as well as the restoration potential at a site. Thus, the CSQT incorporates a qualitative assessment of process drivers and catchment variables to assist the practitioner in determining reference stream type and in assessing limiting factors affecting a project site to determine restoration potential of the project reaches.

The reference stream type and restoration potential processes (described in Sections 2.2 and 3.2 of the User Manual) inform whether a project could achieve reference standards or may be otherwise limited by factors outside the control of a practitioner. Processes can occur at a reach-scale or a broader watershed scale, and the setting influences the current and potential condition of a reach. Hydrologic, geomorphic, and biologic process drivers (Castro and Thorne 2019), both anthropogenic and natural, influence the restoration target and reference stream type selection.

The CSQT relies on a catchment assessment to determine the restoration potential at a project site. The catchment assessment was modified from the WSQT v1.0 for Colorado with input from the CSQT SC to consider anthropogenic modifications common in Colorado. The catchment assessment is a qualitative approach intended to identify catchment-scale factors that may limit the restoration potential at a project site. Restoration potential is defined as the highest level of restoration that can be achieved based on the catchment health, project constraints at the reach scale, and the existing condition of the project reach (Harman et al. 2012). Catchment health is informed by landscape condition, hydrology, geomorphology, habitat, water quality, and biological condition attributes (EPA 2012). Full restoration potential indicates that the project can return biological functions to a reference standard. Partial restoration potential means that improvements can be made, but not all functions can be returned to a reference standard due to severe alteration of structure and function (Beechie et al. 2010; Stoddard et al. 2006).

Information on completing the catchment assessment and determining restoration potential are included in the User Manual.

## 1.4 Development of Reference Curves

The CSQT calculates the **change in condition** at a project site following an impact or restoration activity and allows the user to draw reach-scale conclusions on changes in functional capacity pre- and post-project. These changes in functional capacity are referred to in the CSQT as functional loss and lift and can be used to inform debits and credits as defined in the 2008 Mitigation Rule (33 CFR 332.3). Functional lift or loss is the difference in condition or functional feet within a project reach before and after restoration or a permitted impact.

Reference curves are used in the CSQT to relate point-in-time condition measurements to functional capacity and standardize all metrics to an ecologically relevant scale. Reference curves were developed to assign index values that reflect a range of condition and relate field values for each metric to functional capacity, i.e., functioning, functioning-at-risk, and not-functioning condition (Table 1-1). Describing the functional characteristics, attributes, and condition of ecosystems is a traditional approach to describing functional capacity (Proper Functioning Condition per Prichard et al. 2003).

### Calculating Change in Condition

It is important to remember, that this tool is intended to compare pre- and post-project conditions at a site. As such, the difference between existing and future site conditions is the most important element.

Reference curves are used in the CSQT to relate point-in-time condition measurements to functional capacity and standardize all metrics to an ecologically relevant scale.

Reference curves were developed by first partitioning the index value range (0.0-1.0) into three categories (Table 1-1) which characterize the degree to which the measured condition differs from a reference standard condition (Hawkins et al. 2010). Other assessment methods have taken similar approaches to scale, or score, functional capacity compared to reference systems (e.g. Johnson et al. 2013; Nadeau et al. 2018). Thresholds were defined for each metric to demarcate the index values for not-functioning/functioning-at-risk (0.3) and functioning-at-risk/functioning (0.7) categories. These thresholds and their corresponding field values for each metric were determined by evaluating existing datasets, literature sources, or relying on thresholds developed in other assessments or approaches. For purposes of mitigation, these threshold values can also provide a quantitative, objective approach to monitoring, and can be used to inform performance standards.

To account for natural variability among stream systems, reference curves for specific metrics may be stratified by differences in stream type, ecoregion, biotype, valley type, proposed bankfull width, slope, or thermal regime. Stratification varies by metric (See Appendix A).

To develop reference curves, field values were identified for each metric that would serve as thresholds between the categories of functional capacity outlined in Table 1-1. Three approaches were taken to identify these threshold values:

1. Where possible, thresholds were derived from field values already identified in the State of Colorado's technical publications or the literature (e.g., based on water quality standards, channel classification, or existing indices).
2. Where literature values were not available, threshold values were developed using data from national and regional resource surveys and other available regional datasets. In evaluating reference datasets, the team considered the degree of departure from reference standard to identify the threshold values. For example, the interquartile range

of reference standard sites within a dataset may be used to identify the 0.7 and 1.0 field values for developing a reference curve. This is similar to other approaches that identify benchmarks or index values (e.g., BLM 2017; Nadeau et al. 2018). In the use of existing datasets, this document relied on the definitions of reference standard condition provided by the authors.

- Where existing data or literature were limited, expertise of members of the WSTT and CSQT SC were relied on to identify threshold values. In some instances, the decision was made to not identify thresholds between all categories and instead extrapolate index values from a best fit line from available data or literature values.

*Table 1-1: Functional capacity definitions used to define threshold values and develop reference curves for the CSQT.*

Functional Capacity	Definition	Index Value Range
Functioning	A functioning value means that the metric is quantifying the functional capacity of one aspect of a function- based parameter in a way that <b>supports aquatic ecosystem structure and function</b> . The reference standard concept aligns with the definition for a reference condition for biological integrity (Stoddard et al. 2006). A score of 1.00 represents an un-altered or pristine condition (native or natural condition). A range of index values (0.70-1.00) is used for characterizing reference standard to account for natural variability, recognizing that reference standard datasets include sites that reflect least disturbed condition (i.e., the best available conditions given current anthropogenic influence per Stoddard et al. 2006).	0.70 to 1.00
Functioning-at-risk	A functioning-at-risk value means that the metric is quantifying one aspect of a function-based parameter in a way that <b>may support aquatic ecosystem structure and function</b> , but not at a reference standard level. In many cases, this indicates the parameter is adjusting in response to changes in the reach or the catchment towards lower or higher function. This range characterizes a grey area, where a resource is neither attaining a reference standard nor is significantly degraded or impaired.	0.30 to 0.69
Not-functioning	A not-functioning value means that the metric is quantifying or describing one aspect of a function-based parameter in a way that <b>does not support aquatic ecosystem structure and function</b> . An index value less than 0.30 represents an impaired or severely altered condition relative to reference standard, and an index value of 0.00 represents a condition that provides no functional capacity for that metric. Index values of 0.00 were often extrapolated from the best fit lines, and these were reviewed to determine whether field values would reasonably represent no functional support for that metric.	0.00 to 0.29

Following the identification of these threshold values, reference curves were fit using linear relationships between threshold values. These continuous relationships allow index scores to account for incremental changes in field values, which is important for determining a change in the pre- and post-project condition. If a non-linear fit was used, the rationale for selecting an alternative fit is provided in the specific metric section below. Reference curves and threshold values were determined for each metric individually. Therefore, a reach may achieve a reference standard index value for one metric, e.g., large woody debris index, and not others. Metric index values are then combined to provide a reach score (Section 1.5).

### **1.5 Calculating Reach-Scale Condition Scores**

The architecture and scoring of the CSQT is simple to allow for flexibility in selecting function-based parameters and metrics, and to allow for additions or exchanges of parameters in the future with advances in stream science. This approach differs from assessment approaches that rely on more rigorous statistical analyses for metric selection, calibration, and scoring (Stoddard et al. 2008). There are obvious limitations to this simpler approach, however, a benefit is the flexible architecture – metrics and parameters can be added to or subtracted in subsequent versions of the tool based on new scientific understandings and parameter selection can vary based on site-specific considerations without requiring substantial reanalysis of the weighting in the tool. For example, for a specific site or analysis, the same weighting and metrics would be used for each monitoring event to evaluate change over time, but an alternate suite of metrics could be applied at another site based on a different set of site objectives. Because the **focus of the tool is on the difference between before and after conditions**, flexibility was prioritized over a rigorous approach to weighting.

Index values are generated for each metric, and then combined to provide parameter and functional category scores, as described below:

- Metric index values are averaged to calculate a parameter score. Only the metrics assessed at a given project reach are used to calculate these scores (refer to the User Manual for guidance on parameter and metric selection).
- Parameter scores are averaged to calculate a functional category score.
- Functional category scores are weighted, multiplied by stream length, and then summed to calculate a functional feet value for the reach (see Section 1.6).

The functional category weighting is fixed, regardless of the number of metrics, parameters or functional categories assessed. As noted in Section 1.2, the CSQT combines the hydrology and hydraulic categories from the stream functions pyramid into one category called Reach Hydrology and Hydraulics (Reach H&H). This change was made to provide more proportional weighting between categories within the CSQT. The Reach H&H category is weighted to provide 30% of the functional feet value; geomorphology also provides 30%; and physicochemical and biology each provide 20% of the functional feet value. The Reach H&H and geomorphology functional categories together provide 60% of the total functional feet value, reflecting the number and breadth of parameters in these categories. The weighting for the physicochemical and biological categories (20% weighting each) is slightly less than the other two categories because they can be heavily influenced by changes in catchment-scale processes outside of the project reach and often take longer to show improvement post-restoration (Fischenich 2006). Functional improvement in these categories can occur due to improvements in hydrology, hydraulics and

geomorphology functions if catchment-scale stressors do not themselves limit physicochemical or biological improvements.

The maximum condition and functional feet value that can be achieved is affected by the number of functional categories assessed. For example, only 60% of the potential functional feet value will be realized at a site if only Reach H&H and geomorphology parameters are assessed and monitored. Meanwhile, monitoring one or more metrics in all four functional categories would result in achieving 100% of the potential functional feet value. The weighting incentivizes restoration practitioners to attempt to improve and monitor physicochemical and biology parameters, even if they may not reach full restoration potential.

Because parameter and metric selection can vary based on site-specific considerations, the proportional weighting of each metric will vary from site to site as the number of metrics or parameters measured varies (Table 1-2). If only the basic suite of metrics identified in the User Manual are evaluated, each of those metrics will contribute more to each functional category score when compared with application of all metrics or parameters within a functional category. For example, if a user evaluates lateral migration, bed form diversity, and riparian vegetation in the geomorphology category, each parameter will contribute 10% to the overall potential score, whereas if large wood is also evaluated, each parameter would contribute 7.5% of the overall potential score.

**Table 1-2: Implicit parameter and metric weighting that results from averaging.**

Functional Category	Category Weight	Function-based parameters (no.)	Parameter weight*	Metrics (no.)	Metric weight*
Reach Hydrology and Hydraulics	0.3	3	10-15%	8	3.3-7.5%
Geomorphology	0.3	4	7.5-10%	14	2.5-10%
Physicochemical	0.2	3	6.6-20%	4	3.3-20%
Biology	0.2	2	10-20%	4	5-20%
Add on Modules: (scoring is additive - total score is added on to total from QT worksheet)					
Flow Alteration Module	0.2	1	20%	6	3.3-4%
*Calculated based on the parameters and metrics that would be applied in combination per parameter selection. Note higher percentage is if only basic suite of parameter/metrics are applied.					

The CSQT also includes a flow alteration module whose structure and scoring differ from the scoring within the Quantification Tool worksheet. The flow alteration module generates a functional feet value that is added to the project reach functional feet value calculated using the Quantification Tool worksheet (Table 1-2). The flow alteration module assesses six metrics, which are averaged to calculate a flow alteration module score. The flow alteration module only assesses hydrology, and thus the module score is weighted by 20%. This weighted score is then multiplied by affected reach length to calculate the functional feet value (refer to Chapter 2).

### 1.5.1 Interpreting the Condition Score

When all four functional categories are assessed, the overall condition score can be interpreted as a percent of pristine. For example, if the overall condition score is 0.6, the reach is considered to be functioning at 60% of pristine for the parameters that were assessed. There could still be

unknowns in condition if optional parameters are not assessed.

The overall condition score reflects the stream type, flow regime, and landscape setting that is characterized in the input and stratification table. For example, a 0.6 could represent a perennial, third order (Strahler 1957) stream, or the same 0.6 could represent an ephemeral, first order stream. The perennial stream could be located in a prairie ecoregion and the ephemeral stream could be in a headwater mountain ecoregion. Therefore, it is important to compare the overall score with the input selections.

To improve communication about the overall score, flow regime and channel size indicators have been attached to the score. Flow regime is denoted by a P, I, or E to represent perennial, intermittent, or ephemeral and the Strahler stream order method is used to denote stream size. A 1, 2, 3 etc. is added to the score to show the stream order. So, using the example above, the perennial, third order stream with a 0.6 overall score will show up as 0.6 (P3). The first order ephemeral channel will show up as a 0.6 (E1).

## **1.6 Calculating Functional Feet**

The CSQT estimates the **change in condition** at an impact or mitigation site by calculating the difference between existing (pre-project) and proposed or post-project condition. Existing, proposed, and post-project monitoring condition scores are then scaled for project size by multiplying these condition scores by stream length to calculate functional feet. In a stream with an existing condition score of 1.00, one functional foot would equal one linear foot of stream.

When condition is less than 1.00, or not all functional categories are measured, the functional feet are no longer equivalent to stream length. The difference between proposed and existing functional feet values, referred to as the change in functional feet ( $\Delta FF$ ), is the amount of functional lift or loss within a project reach.

The  $\Delta FF$  is intended to serve as the basis for calculating debits and credits. Many programs continue to rely on activity or ratio-based approaches to calculate credits or assign credit ratios based on changes to channel geometry (ELI et al. 2016). Ratio-based approaches rely on areal or length measurements regardless of condition. **The purpose of the CSQT is to generate a unit of measure that better integrates changes in condition into crediting and debiting approaches.** The functional feet calculation made in the CSQT and Debit Calculator workbooks incorporates stream length (existing and proposed) with **quantitative measures of stream condition that also**

**include the floodplain and riparian corridor.** The functional feet unit is more representative of ecological function than a length or areal measure (e.g., stream length or area) alone. The

### **Linear Feet and Functional Feet**

The Corps currently accounts for permitted impacts in linear feet or aquatic resource area (e.g., Nationwide Permit impact thresholds, data entry into ORM database) and only regulates activities within aquatic resource boundaries (e.g., the ordinary high water mark of streams).

The functional feet unit serves as the bridge between the condition assessment and application within a debit/credit policy framework for program implementation.

Future versions of the CSQT may accommodate alternate or modified approaches, but more consideration on how these approaches could be implemented on the debit and credit side is needed before this selection is made.

functional feet unit serves as the bridge between the condition assessment and application within a debit/credit policy framework for program implementation.

Stream length is included in the functional feet unit to provide scale to the condition score. For example, a small project, such as a culvert removal, may yield a substantial difference between the proposed and existing condition score, but a relatively small change in functional feet because the reach is very short. A very long project with moderate condition improvement will produce a bigger change in functional feet because the improvements affect a larger length of stream. The use of stream length follows that of other Corps Districts with established compensatory stream mitigation programs, which use a variety of factors that are then multiplied by stream length to create a debit or credit (Table 1-3, Page 16). This product of quality and length is a common currency for debit and credit calculations (ELI et al. 2016).

The CSQT SC considered several alternatives to the length-based approach, including a functional-area product and a valley-area measure. Both are discussed briefly below:

*Functional-area product:* This approach would rely on an area-based unit of measure instead of stream length (e.g., PADEP 20014). An approach using stream area (e.g., stream width by length) may better account for the size differences between small and large streams, including a greater amount of aquatic habitat in a larger stream. The unresolved challenges with an approach that relies on channel width is that width often changes as a response to natural and anthropogenic influences. Attempts to predict the final width would be difficult and create more uncertainty than relying on length alone because it could change each year. Another problem is that multiplying by width incentives practitioners to design larger channels, which can be counter-productive to increasing functional lift. Finally, this option does not address the importance of the floodplain and riparian corridor and is therefore not an improvement over length in this regard.

*Valley area:* Another approach considered was valley area (valley length times valley width) instead of stream length. This approach has merit, as it characterizes the stream and floodplain corridor in a more holistic way. However, the major challenge with this approach is in accounting for the net loss or gain in stream length, an important consideration in the regulatory program. For example, an increase in stream length would not be accounted for in a stream restoration project. And conversely, a channelization project that reduces stream length would not count as a loss. The Corps currently accounts for permitted impacts in linear feet or aquatic resource area (e.g., Nationwide Permit impact thresholds, data entry into ORM database) and only regulates activities within aquatic resource boundaries (e.g., within a delineated wetland or the ordinary high water mark of streams), and it is unclear how a valley-based approach would align with current impact accounting practices.

Additional discussions and research on implementation are needed before adopting a valley-based approach across all projects. Therefore, this approach may be considered for future versions of the CSQT.

**Table 1-3: Debit and credit approaches that consider a combination of condition and stream length. Adapted from ELI et al. (2016) with Wyoming added (USACE 2018d).**

State/Corps District	General Debit Approach	General Credit Approach
Nebraska (2012)	<p><b>Impact Units = (Stream Condition Index Score) x (stream length)</b></p> <p>Includes a condition assessment procedure and impact/mitigation calculator predicting proposed condition.</p>	<p><b>Mitigation Units = (Stream Condition Index Score) x (stream length)</b></p> <p>Same assessment and calculator used to compare impact and compensation sites.</p>
South Pacific Division (2015)	<p>Mitigation Ratio Checklist factors in several multipliers but can also incorporate functional assessment data via a before-after-mitigation-impact (BAMI) spreadsheet to determine baseline ratio.</p>	<p>Mitigation Ratio Checklist - both impact and mitigation info are input into same checklist</p>
Pennsylvania (2014)	<p><b>Compensation Requirement (CR) = (area of impact) x (PE) x (RV) x (CI)</b></p> <p>PE = project effect factor based on severity of impacts</p> <p>RV = resource value based on categories of resource quality</p> <p>CI = condition index value from condition assessment</p> <p>CR is calculated for each aquatic resource function category and summed for total debit.</p>	<p><b>Functional Credit Gain (FCG) = (area of project) x (RV) x (CV) x (CI<sub>diff</sub>)</b></p> <p>RV= same as debits</p> <p>CV = compensation value based on level of benefit</p> <p>CI<sub>diff</sub> = condition index differential value based on difference in existing and predicted condition</p>
Galveston (2013)	<p><b>Compensation requirement (CR) = (Δ resource condition) x (impact factor) x (stream length)</b></p> <p>Like Pennsylvania, but CR is not calculated separately for each functional category.</p>	<p>Credits defined by level of effort (e.g., reestablishment is 3 credits/LF, rehabilitation or enhancement is 1 credit/LF) and factors related to the riparian buffer.</p>
Norfolk (2004)	<p><b>Compensation Requirement = (length of impact) x (RCI) x (IF)</b></p> <p>RCI = reach condition index is a weighted average of categorical condition indices for four parameters (channel condition, riparian buffer, instream habitat, channel alteration)</p> <p>IF = impact factor based on the severity of impact (0-1)</p>	<p><b>Compensation Credit = restoration credit + enhancement credit + riparian buffer credit + adjustment factor credit</b></p> <p>Credits defined by level of effort (e.g., restoration is 1 credit/LF, enhancement is 0.09-0.3 credit/LF, etc.) and other adjustment factors (e.g., T&amp;E or watershed preservation)</p>
West Virginia (2011)	<p><b>Unit Score = (Index Score) x (stream length)</b></p> <p>Debit tables used to calculate index score (0-1), considers West Virginia Stream and Wetland Valuation Metric (WVSWVM) which incorporates assessment methods using project specific data, and factors like temporal loss and site protection.</p>	<p><b>Unit Score = (Index Score) x (stream length)</b></p> <p>Index score derived from credit tables. Unit scores are calculated at mitigation site over three intervals (existing, post-construction &amp; maturity).</p>
Wyoming (2018)	<p><b>Debits = ΔFF x sum[DF]</b></p> <p>ΔFunctional Feet (ΔFF) = (Proposed Condition Score x proposed stream length) – (Existing Condition Score x existing stream length)</p> <p>DF = debit factors identified in the WSMP v2.</p>	<p><b>Credits = ΔFF x sum[CF]</b></p> <p>ΔFunctional Feet(ΔFF) same as debits</p> <p>CF = credit factors identified in the WSMP v2.</p>

## **1.7 Function-Based Parameters**

The CSQT considers a suite of functional indicators that are sensitive to anthropogenic modification of reach-scale processes, i.e., the types of activities (both impact and mitigation projects) that are common in the Clean Water Act Section 404 (CWA 404) dredge and fill permitting program. The tool also considers related ecosystem functions that could be affected by these activities, including changes to water quantity and/or quality and biological communities. Recognizing that not all projects will have the same objectives or components, the CSQT allows for flexibility in selecting parameters for specific projects; refer to the parameter selection section in the User Manual for guidelines on parameter and metric selection. ELI et al. (2016) noted that regulatory protocols should allow for function-based goals and objectives that are project specific, clearly stated, and feasible so that performance standards and monitoring can be targeted for that specific project. Parameters included in the CSQT could assist in setting performance standards for projects with goals to restore instream flows, restore targeted fish communities, improve water quality, or implement other project-specific objectives.

The complete set of function-based parameters and metrics used in the CSQT is listed in Appendix A. Rationale for including a parameter and its metrics in the tool, and why other metrics were not used, is provided in Table 1-4 and throughout this document in the parameter summaries. The overarching criteria used to select parameters and metrics included the following:

- Ability to link the parameters to the functional statement in the SFPF and ability to link the metrics to restoration or impact activities. The metrics that inform the functional capacity of the parameter should be responsive to activities.
- Parameters and metrics should be reach-based. Changes in metrics should occur at a reach scale where restoration and impact activities occur. Note, stressors and changes to catchment scale processes may affect both existing and proposed condition scores and are considered in the determination of restoration potential (see Section 1.3 and the CSQT User Manual for details).
- Ability to develop reference curves for each metric. Information needs to be available to characterize the reference aquatic resources and relate this range of conditions to a reference standard.
- Flexibility in the level of effort for data collection and analysis. Corps Guidance (RGL 08-03) articulates that the level of analysis and documentation for evaluating applications under CWA 404 should be commensurate with the scale and scope of a project.
- Applicable and meaningful in Colorado. Colorado is a high elevation, headwaters state characterized by a wide range of precipitation (4-80"). Colorado contains variable soils and parent materials; significant urban development; abundant federal public lands managed for multiple uses including rangeland, extractive industries and recreation; and highly allocated and diverted surface water rights.

**Table 1-4: A summary of the parameters included in Harman et al. (2012) and rationale for their inclusion or exclusion from the CSQT.**

Functional Category	Parameter from the Function-Based Framework	Included in CSQT (Yes/No)	Rationale
Hydrology	Channel Forming Discharge	Yes	Aspects of the flow regime are characterized in the Flow Alteration Module (Chapters 2); reach runoff is characterized in Chapter 3.
	Precipitation/Runoff Relationship		
	Flood Frequency		
	Flow Duration		
Hydraulics	Flow Dynamics	Yes	Baseflow Dynamics, See Chapter 4.
	Groundwater/Surface Water Exchange	No	Difficult to assess and develop reference curves.
	Floodplain Connectivity	Yes	See Chapter 5.
Geomorphology	Channel Evolution	No	Considered in determination of restoration potential and selection of reference stream type.
	Sediment Transport Competency and Capacity*	No	Not recommended by Function-Based Framework for showing functional lift/loss. Highly recommended as part of the design process. Indirectly captured by other parameters.
	Large Woody Debris	Yes	See Chapter 6.
	Bank Migration/Lateral Stability	Yes	See Lateral Migration (Chapter 7).
	Bed Material Characterization	No	Was in included in CSQT Beta Version but removed in v1.0. See Chapter 8.
	Bed Form Diversity	Yes	See Chapter 9.
	Plan Form**	No	Was in included in CSQT Beta Version but removed in v1.0 (see Section 2.2 in the User Manual and below).
	Riparian Vegetation	Yes	See Chapter 10.
Physicochemical	Organic Carbon	No	Difficult to develop reference curves.
	Bacteria**	No	Difficult to develop reference curves, CO water quality criteria are more targeted for human health than aquatic ecosystem function.
	Water Quality (pH, and Conductivity)	No	Conductivity and pH were not prioritized for inclusion in this version of the CSQT.
	Water Quality (Temperature and Dissolved Oxygen)	Yes	See Temperature (Chapter 11) and Dissolved Oxygen (Chapter 12).
	Nutrients	Yes	See Chapter 13.
Biology	Macrophyte Communities	No	Uncommon in stream mitigation monitoring.
	Microbial Communities	No	Uncommon in stream mitigation monitoring.
	Landscape Connectivity	No	Requires assessments beyond the project reach. Reference standards are typically species specific.
	Macroinvertebrate Communities	Yes	See Chapter 14.
	Fish Communities	Yes	See Chapter 15.
* The Function-Based Framework refers to Harman et al. (2012) which provides more information about these parameters and why they are recommended for the design phase and not for characterizing lift or loss.			
** These parameters were not included in Harman et al. (2012) but were added later to other SQT's.			

Sinuosity was included as a metric for a plan form parameter in the reach condition assessment of the CSQT Beta Version. While sinuosity is important in appropriate design of single-thread channels, the CSQT v1.0 has removed sinuosity from the scoring of reach condition. There is space for the user to enter the existing and proposed sinuosity values for the reach on the Project Assessment worksheet of the CSQT v1.0.

The following experiences led to the removal of the sinuosity metric and plan form parameter:

- The way sinuosity was included as a metric within the planform parameter results in over-valuation of that metric.
  - Sinuosity is already captured in the SQT scoring because of the use of functional feet (i.e., increasing or decreasing stream length results in a relative increase or decrease in functional feet).
  - Plan form improvements are quantified in pool spacing between geomorphic pools in meandering systems.
- Sinuosity measurements can be highly variable when measured on a reach-scale. In some projects submitted to the Corps, there was a lot of variability in determining valley length, particularly in confined reaches, which drastically affected sinuosity values (e.g., stream length was drastically reduced, but sinuosity values did not change pre- and post-project because of related design changes to the floodplain).
- While there are concerns that eliminating the sinuosity metric might lead to overly sinuous designs, there is some research on the economics of stream restoration that has noted that practitioners are generally not incentivized to create overly sinuous channels to maximize credit returns, because there are risks associated with implementing designs that may fail (Doyle et al. 2015).

## **1.8 Data Sources, Data Gaps, and Limitations**

As described in Section 1.4, the reference curves included in the CSQT sometimes relied on data from national and regional resource surveys and other available datasets. Potential data sources were evaluated using the five assessment factors outlined by the Science Policy Council in *A Summary of General Assessment Factors for Evaluating the Quality of Scientific and Technical Information*, including applicability and utility; evaluation and review; soundness; clarity and completeness; and uncertainty and variability (USEPA 2003).

Some larger datasets used to inform reference curves for multiple metrics are described below. Some of these datasets include data from other states which have ecoregions that overlap with Colorado, and other datasets include data collected within Colorado only. In the use of existing datasets, this document relied on the definitions of reference standard condition provided by the authors.

### **WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset:**

Geomorphic reference datasets collected by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department (WGFD) and the US Forest Service (USFS) were compiled for the WSQT v1.0. Wyoming shares many similar ecological and natural stream characteristics with the mountainous, headwater streams in Colorado and, due to limited development compared to Colorado, has more resources that meet the reference standard criteria of being least disturbed. For these reasons, and the lack of

Colorado data available at the time of CSQT Beta Version and v1.0 development, the metrics and reference curves developed from these data sets are also used in the CSQT. As additional geomorphic data are made available from CO streams, the reference curves can be further evaluated and updated as needed (see Section 1.9).

The dataset consisted primarily of B (22 sites) and C (27 sites) Rosgen stream types. There were nine E type streams in the dataset but only three F streams.

The dataset from WGFD was collected at approximately 20 sites throughout the mountainous regions of Wyoming between 2003 and 2006. The USFS dataset was collected from the Shoshone National Forest in the Middle Rockies region of Wyoming between 2003 and 2014 and consists of approximately 40 sites. The longitudinal profiles, cross sections, and bed material data from both datasets were reviewed as part of the quality assurance project plan for the development of the WSQT. Sites that passed the review were included in the study. In August 2016 the Wyoming Stream Technical Team (WSTT) revisited several reference sites from the WGFD dataset to apply the proposed WSQT methodology, verify the reference data from the dataset, and confirm bankfull determinations.

This dataset, referred to as the WY geomorphic reference dataset in the remainder of this document, represents reference standard sites and was used to develop reference curves for metrics that describe floodplain connectivity and bed form diversity parameters.

#### National Rivers and Streams Assessment (NRSA) Dataset:

The 2009 National Rivers and Streams Assessment dataset (NRSA; USEPA 2016) was reviewed to determine which metrics in the dataset could be used to inform the development of reference curves within the Wyoming and Colorado SQTs. The NRSA dataset includes a variety of metrics, including data on large wood and riparian vegetation. Data were compiled from sites in Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, and Utah and grouped into EPA Level III ecoregions. Specific attributes from the dataset are used in this document and descriptions are provided to relate NRSA attributes to stratification or metrics within the CSQT.

The NRSA dataset was used to develop reference curves for the piece count metric within the large woody debris parameter. NRSA datasets include sites across a range of conditions, from reference standard to degraded.

#### Colorado Natural Heritage Program (CNHP) Dataset:

A large riparian vegetation dataset was compiled by the Colorado Natural Heritage Program (CNHP; Kittel et al. 1999) to characterize riparian community types across Colorado. This dataset was provided by CNHP for use in evaluating riparian metrics for the Wyoming and Colorado SQTs.

The CNHP dataset included condition ratings for all sites, scored as A, B, C, and D. For developing Wyoming and Colorado SQT reference curves, (A) sites were considered reference standard based on ecological conditions and (D) sites were considered degraded. The data were collected over multiple years and the methods and definitions for condition ratings were refined as the program progressed; thus, the sites identified as B and C were removed from the analysis following discussions with CHNP. The dataset was stratified into woody and herbaceous community types for further analysis. Sites were classified as herbaceous where there was less than 20% cover of woody vegetation (Carsey et al. 2003).

The dataset consisted of species level cover data. Reference curves for woody vegetation cover

and herbaceous vegetation cover were developed by summing absolute cover values categorized by stratum. Species in the dataset identified as graminoid or forb were grouped into the herbaceous stratum, shrub species cover values were combined with tree species cover values into a woody stratum. This dataset, referred to as the CNHP dataset in the rest of this document, was used to develop reference curves for riparian vegetation cover metrics.

Water Quality Control Division (WQCD) Dataset:

The Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment (CDPHE) environmental data unit collects benthic macroinvertebrate, physical habitat, and water chemistry data on waters throughout the state. Data that was collected by CDPHE was downloaded from USEPA STORET<sup>1</sup> and processed in consultation with CPW. Sites within the dataset were identified as reference, other, or stressed based on an assessment of the upstream catchment using GIS and aerial imagery (CDPHE 2017). Impacts considered in the analysis included land use, point sources, water diversion, road density, abandoned mines, oil and gas facilities, and concentrated animal feeding operations. This dataset, referred to as the WQCD dataset in the rest of this document, was used to develop reference curves for chlorophyll  $\alpha$  and dissolved oxygen metrics.

Stratification by Ecoregion and Biotype:

Several metrics described in this document are stratified by ecoregion. Data was used from the EPA Level III ecoregions occurring within Colorado and Wyoming. As these ecoregions extend into adjoining states, data from Utah and Montana were also included in the analysis. Sample sizes within each EPA Level III ecoregion were variable, so EPA Level III ecoregion data were grouped into broader ecoregion classifications (Table 1-5). These broader ecoregion classifications align with EPA Level II ecoregions but only include the subset of Level III ecoregions that occur within Colorado and Wyoming. Data from both west-central and south-central semiarid prairies Level II ecoregions are included in the Plains ecoregion described in Table 1-5.

*Table 1-5: EPA Level III Ecoregion Groupings Used for Data Analysis*

<b>Mountains</b>	<b>Basins</b>	<b>Plains</b>
Southern Rockies	Wyoming Basin	High Plains
Middle Rockies	Colorado Plateau	Northwest Great Plains
Wasatch/Uinta Mountains	Arizona/New Mexico Plateau	Southwestern Tablelands

Several metrics described in this document are stratified by biotype. Biotype is similar to, but distinct from the ecoregions described above (CDPHE 2017). Biotype is determined based on EPA Level IV ecoregion, elevation, and stream slope (Table 1-6). To avoid confusion with the ecoregion categories above, biotypes are identified in the CSQT by their number (1, 2, or 3) rather than their name designations (transition, mountains, and plains & xeric, respectively).

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.waterqualitydata.us/portal/>

**Table 1-6: Site Biotype Classification Rules (reproduced from Appendix A of CDPHE 2017)**

Criteria	Biotype 1 (Transition)	Biotype 2 (Mountains)	Biotype 3 (Plains & Xeric)
Level IV Ecoregions:	21d, 21h, 21i, 21j, 25l, 26i	21a, 21b, 21e, or 21g	All 25 and 26 Level IV Ecoregions except 25l and 26i
Slope:	21c and slope < 0.04 ft/ft	21c and slope > 0.04 ft/ft	-
Elevation:	21f and elevation < 8,202 ft	21f and elevation > 8,202 ft	Any ecoregion, elevation < 5,085 ft

Data Gaps and Limitations:

We recognize there are limitations to the approaches outlined herein to develop reference curves. There is a large diversity of stream types in Colorado due to differences in landform, climate and geology, which in turn influence the hydrogeomorphic context of streams. We have tried to develop a tool that is broadly applicable across different hydrologic and geomorphic regimes through the stratification process and simple scoring but recognize that there will always be limitations to this type of approach.

Rigorously accounting for regional variability among sites requires large datasets and statistically derived conclusions. These types of reference datasets were not always available for metrics included in this tool. Over time, it will be possible to revise reference curves as more data become available and the CSQT is applied throughout the state (see Section 1.9). It is important to remember that this tool is intended to compare pre- and post-project conditions at a site. As such, the difference between existing and future site conditions is the most important element. For example, a site may not attain reference standard condition, but it may show improvements that translate into an accrual of functional capacity.

Some metrics and their reference curves are not stratified, others are stratified by ecoregion, valley type, stream type, reference community type, etc., with reference curves for each (see Appendix A). In some instances, data were not available for all regions or stream types, and thus application of certain metrics may be limited. Specific data gaps and limits to applicability are addressed within each metric description and are identified in Appendix A. Future versions of the tool will benefit from additional data collection and analysis.

The CSQT can be applied in all stream settings in Colorado. However, not all metrics are applicable in ephemeral or intermittent streams, braided and anastomosed streams, and beaver-influenced systems. Table 1-7 shows what parameters are applicable to different stream flow and channel types, and these limitations should be considered when selecting parameters and metrics to include in the CSQT for a specific site. Additionally, modifications to sampling methods may be needed to accommodate data collection in multi-thread or non-wadeable streams.

Several metrics rely on bankfull depth or width to account for differences in stream size. Inaccuracies and/or inconsistencies in determining bankfull dimensions for a site will affect the way these metrics are characterized in the tool. Therefore, guidance on bankfull verification is provided in the User Manual.

**Table 1-7: Applicability of metrics across flow permanence and in multi-thread systems. An ‘x’ denotes that one or more metrics within a parameter is applicable within these stream types.**

Applicable Parameters	Perennial	Intermittent	Ephemeral	Multi-thread Channels
Reach Runoff	x	x	x	x
Flow Alteration	x	x		x
Baseflow Dynamics	x			
Floodplain Connectivity	x	x	x	x (BHR only)
Large Wood*	x	x	x	x
Lateral Migration	x	x	x	x
Bed Form Diversity	x	x		
Riparian Vegetation	x	x	x	x
Temperature	x	Where baseflows extend through sampling period		x
Dissolved Oxygen	x			x
Nutrients	x			x
Macroinvertebrates	x			x (perennial only)
Fish	x	x		X

\* May not be applicable if large wood is not naturally present in the system.

**Key limitations**

- The CSQT was developed and tested using data from largely single thread, perennial stream systems. Thus, some data collection methods and reference curves may not be representative of the functional capacity that naturally exists in ephemeral or intermittent streams, and braided or anastomosing systems. Work is ongoing to consider how to broaden the applicability of the tool in these systems.
- Most metrics in the CSQT rely on wadeable data collection methods. Thus, sampling efficiency and applicability of reference curves in non-wadeable rivers is unknown.
- The CSQT does not predict the long-term trajectory of condition because it was designed as a reach-scale, point-in-time condition assessment. However, the CSQT can show trends or changes in condition with routine monitoring. These trends can then be tied to channel/stream evolution models.
- As a reach-based evaluation, the tool does not capture secondary (indirect) effects in reaches upstream or downstream of the sampled reach. Additional reaches would need to be defined and assessed in order to quantify the changes in condition that are further removed from the project site, e.g., changes to longitudinal connectivity, fish passage, beaver re- introduction, and other projects that have effects beyond the project reach limits.
- The CSQT cannot be used as part of an ambient monitoring program unless the same parameters and metrics are applied consistently across all sites using the same data collection techniques.
- The explicit and implicit weightings of CSQT metrics were not generated from a statistically derived approach.

- Multiple datasets and sources were used to develop reference curves. Thus, sample sizes and the level of uncertainty varies across metrics and across stratified reference curves within metrics. Additional testing and data collection will be beneficial to inform future versions of the tool.

### **1.9 Revisions to the CSQT and Reference Curves**

Reference curves included in the CSQT and this document will be reviewed and updated, as needed. If additional datasets and/or literature values are provided they will be evaluated using the five assessment factors outlined in *A Summary of General Assessment Factors for Evaluating the Quality of Scientific and Technical Information* (USEPA 2003) and considered for inclusion in the tool.

Additionally, the CSQT architecture is flexible and can accommodate additional parameters and metrics in future versions of the tool. If a user is interested in proposing additional parameters or metrics for incorporation into the tool, they should provide a written proposal for consideration. The proposal should include data sources or literature references and should follow the framework for identifying threshold values and index scores that is outlined in this document. Additionally, the user should include information on data collection approaches, including experience required.

Technical feedback may be submitted at any time to the USACE Pueblo Regulatory Office at 201 West 8<sup>th</sup> Street Suite 350, Pueblo, Colorado, 81003, or contact the office at (719) 744-9119; an email address can be provided on request.

## Chapter 2. Flow Alteration Module

The module and metrics are considered provisional and subject to testing and revision.

A flow regime is characterized by the magnitude, frequency, duration, timing, and rate of change of flow events. Altering these characteristics can impact geomorphic and ecological functions of the stream (Poff et al. 1997). Specifically, flow alteration can affect a range of environmentally relevant flows, including extreme low flows, baseflows, high flow pulses, small floods, and large floods (Mathews and Richter 2007; Poff et al. 1997). The resulting effect on a stream ecosystem varies depending on what aspects of the flow regime are modified and the significance of the flow alteration. Common sources of flow alteration include: dams, diversions, groundwater withdrawals, effluent discharges, land use change, and climate change. These common sources of flow alteration can have cascading impacts on aquatic resources (Novak et al. 2015). Conducting appropriate hydrologic analyses to understand historical and current alterations in the flow regime is critical in developing a successful restoration project design (Roni and Beechie 2013).

Flow alteration is ubiquitous throughout Colorado. Flow alteration and habitat fragmentation associated with water delivery infrastructure have contributed to the decline of native fish species and degradation of aquatic habitat in Colorado (CPW 2015). Approximately 60% of the fish species native to Colorado have either been extirpated or need conservation actions (CPW 2015). Therefore, for projects that propose changes to flow regime, it is important to assess the degree of flow alteration in Colorado streams to provide a basic characterization of flow regime, evaluate impairment of stream functions and the potential flow changes associated with additional alteration or restoration and mitigation projects. To this end, the CSQT SC developed a flow alteration module for the CSQT to encourage mitigation approaches that restore components of the native flow regime. For the purposes of the CSQT, native flows are the estimates of the stream flows that would result from natural hydrologic processes such as rainfall-runoff and snowmelt-runoff without anthropogenic influence at a given location.

Multiple approaches have been developed to characterize and evaluate hydrologic alteration (e.g., Richter et al. 1996; Olden and Poff 2003) and identify environmental flows that maintain important stream processes (e.g., Poff et al. 2010; Sanderson et al. 2012). Such efforts, including the Ecological Limits of Hydrologic Alteration (ELOHA) framework, often rely on extensive hydrologic modeling and stakeholder processes to develop thresholds or benchmarks (Poff et al. 2010).

The CSQT SC felt it was important to provide a basic characterization of flow regime to evaluate potential flow changes associated with impact or mitigation projects to inform compensatory mitigation decisions. The flow alteration module provides this basic characterization by comparing current and proposed hydrology within a reach to the native flow regime. This module does not substitute for hydrologic analyses that provide more detailed evaluations of impacts or otherwise support project planning and design.

### Module Structure and Scoring:

The flow alteration module is included as a worksheet in the CSQT and Debit Calculator workbooks. This module is intended to calculate the functional feet value related to **changes in operational commitments, acquisition/change of existing water rights, or new facilities that enable the proposed hydrology to occur.**

The module is separate from the reach-scale assessment within the Quantification Tool worksheet

because the functional feet value is calculated using a different reach length than the other metrics within the Quantification Tool worksheet. Because flow alteration has the potential to affect longer stream reaches than a project reach evaluated within the Quantification Tool worksheet and monitoring requirements for flow alteration differ from reach-scale restoration, the flow alteration module calculates functional feet using an affected stream length. Affected stream length includes the entire stream length affected by the project-specific flow alteration (i.e., from the upstream extent where impacts or flow protection would initiate to the downstream location of the next water rights user, tributary junction, or terminus beyond which the flow modification has no measurable effect on functional capacity).

The architecture and scoring of the flow alteration module follows the architecture and scoring in the Quantification Tool worksheet in the CSQT. Flow alteration module scores are based only on the metric field values that are input into the module. Index values are generated for each metric field value; metric index values are then averaged to create a module score. Metrics that are not assessed are not included in the score, i.e. they are not scored as a zero.

The flow alteration module estimates the change in condition at an impact or mitigation site by calculating the difference between existing (pre-project) and proposed (post-project) condition scores. The difference between existing and proposed condition scores is multiplied by affected stream length to calculate the functional feet for the module. The change in functional feet from the affected stream length is then weighted by 20% and added to the functional feet generated by the reach on the Quantification Tool worksheet (refer to Section 1.5 and the User Manual for more detail on scoring). This weighting was done to ensure that the functional feet value for the flow alteration module was scaled similarly with the functional categories within the Quantification Tool worksheet, which each contribute 20-30% of the overall functional feet value for a project.

#### Metric Selection:

In the development of the Watershed Flow Evaluation Tool (WFET), Sanderson et al. (2012) evaluated ecologically relevant flow metrics (Olden and Poff, 2003) using Indicators of Hydrologic Alteration (IHA; Richter et al. 1996). The analyses relied on gage data and Colorado's StateMod hydrologic modeling approach. In their study, Sanderson et al. identified five IHA metrics that were compatible and sufficiently accurate to be useful in the flow analysis: mean annual flow, mean August flow, mean September flow, mean January flow, and mean annual peak daily flow.

Multiple aspects of the natural flow regime, including extreme low flows, baseflows, high flow pulses, small floods, and large floods are important to maintain ecological processes (Mathews and Richter 2007). The flow alteration module characterizes the following: extreme low flows using a 7-day minimum metric; late season baseflow using August and September mean flow metrics; winter baseflows using January mean flow metrics; high flow pulses using a mean annual peak flow metric; and overall flow volume using a mean annual flow metric. The six-metric module does not include metrics for frequency, duration, timing, or rate of change. However, substitution or removal of flow metrics will be considered on a case-specific basis where alternative metrics would better represent the flow regime of the stream. Example substitutions may include:

- The user can opt to use either August or September, or select an alternative month to represent summer baseflow when mean August or September Flow (Q) values are not

representative of late season baseflow due to the local climate and hydrologic regime, e.g. August monsoons.

- In intermittent streams, the mean August, September, and January Q metrics can be replaced with month(s) that are critical to spawning for native fish, based on local climate and hydrologic regime.
- In intermittent streams, the 7-day minimum metric may be replaced with the number of zero flow days.

Metrics:

- Mean Annual Q (O/E)
- Mean Aug Q (O/E)
- Mean Sept Q (O/E)
- Mean Jan Q (O/E)
- Mean Annual Peak Daily Q (O/E)
- 7-Day Minimum (O/E)

Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves for the metrics in the flow alteration module have been adapted from the reference curves developed for the observed over expected low flow metric from the WSQT v1.0.

In 2010, Poff and Zimmerman published a literature review characterizing ecological responses to altered flow regimes. The authors found that both macroinvertebrate and fish populations declined with increases and decreases in flow magnitude, and much of the published literature focused on large flow alterations, i.e., greater than 50% change from natural conditions. The study was “not able to extract any robust statistical relationships between the size of the flow alteration and the ecological responses,” illustrating the challenge in identifying ecological thresholds for flow alteration.

In a study on flow alteration at stream gage sites throughout the U.S., Carlisle et al. (2010) observed biological impairment in some sites with hydrologic alteration of 0-25% and in an increasing percentage of sites beyond 25% hydrologic alteration. Zorn et al. (2008) predicted that adverse resource impacts would occur on most types of rivers with withdrawals greater than 17–25% of index flow. Binns and Eisermann (1979) considered the relationship of late summer baseflows to average annual flows to support trout.

Richter et al. (2012) proposed a presumptive flow standard for environmental flow protection (Table 2-1) which is applied to daily flow values and relies on a dataset that includes daily natural flows (baseline and native (unregulated) flows). The daily natural flows (existing conditions) define the “baseline” flow data to which measured daily flows are compared (Richter et al. 2012). Meanwhile, native flows are the estimates of the stream flows that would result from natural hydrologic processes such as rainfall-runoff and snowmelt-runoff without any anthropogenic influence at a given location.

**Table 2-1: Presumptive Flow Standard. Adapted from Richter et al. (2012)**

Deviation from Natural Daily Flow (+/-)	Level of Protection	Description
≤ 10%	High	The natural structure and function of the riverine ecosystem will be maintained with minimal changes.
11 – 20%	Moderate	There may be measurable changes in structure and minimal changes in ecosystem functions.
> 20%	N/A	Likely result in moderate to major changes in natural structure and ecosystem functions, with greater risk associated with greater levels of alteration in daily flows.

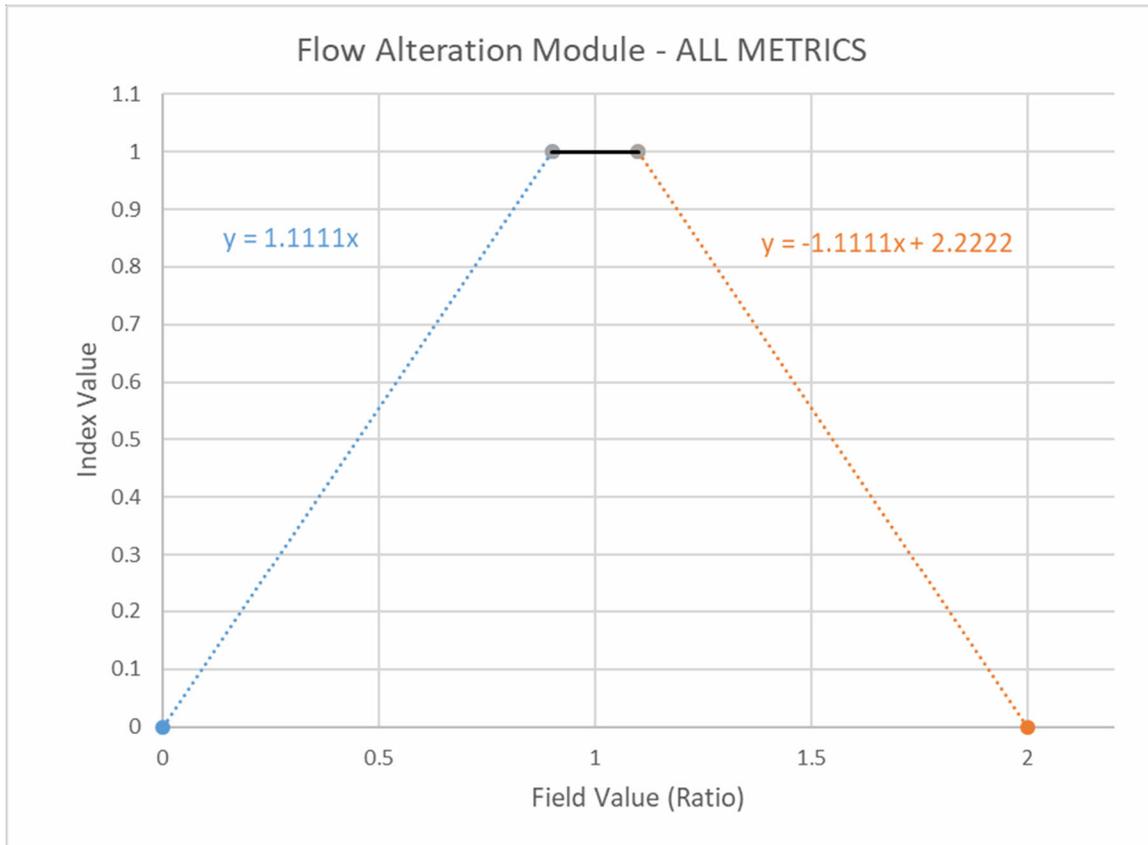
The flow alteration module metrics rely on the presumptive standard (Richter et al. 2012) to define threshold values. The presumptive standard considers flow alterations as a proportion of native flow values and is applied to all metrics in the flow alteration module. The following criteria were used to develop the reference curve in the CSQT (Table 2-2):

- The maximum index score (1.00) equates to a native flow value (e.g., a deviation of 0 or an O/E value of 1.0). In line with the presumptive standard defined by Richter et al. (2012), 90% to 110% of the expected flow value would also yield an index value of 1.00 in the CSQT.
- The minimum index score (0.00) equates to deviation of factor of 1, or an O/E value of 0.0 for flow decreases or 2.0 for flow increases. These values are based on best professional judgement, recognizing that substantial deviation from the native flow regime may impact stream structure and function.

A linear curve was fit between the defined values (Table 2-2 and Figure 2-1).

**Table 2-2: Threshold Values for Flow Alteration Module Metrics (O/E)**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	0.90 – 1.10
0.00	0.00, 2.00



**Figure 2-1: Flow Alteration Module Metrics Reference Curves**

The flow alteration module was evaluated using data from 16 gaged sites (Table 2-3). All data were derived with the IHA application using data from USGS stream gages (Sanderson et al. 2012). The elevation of study gages ranged from 6,280 to 9,990 ft, and the contributing area ranged from 3 to 3,971 square miles. Case studies include sites with minimally altered flow conditions and sites where flow has been altered by reservoirs, trans-mountain diversions, or both. A summary of the case studies is provided in Table 2-4.

**Table 2-3: USGS Gage Station IDs for Flow Alteration Module Case Studies**

Site	USGS Gage ID
Joe Wright Creek Below Joe Wright Reservoir	6746110
Fraser River at Winter Park	9024000
Williams Fork Below Williams Fork Reservoir	9038500
Taylor River below Taylor Park Reservoir	9109000
Colorado River Near Granby	9019500
North Fork Gunnison River Near Somerset	9132500
Yampa River at Steamboat Springs	9239500
Gunnison River Below Gunnison Tunnel	9128000
Joe Wright Creek Above Joe Wright Reservoir	6746095
Halfmoon Creek Near Malta	7083000
South Fork Williams Fork Near Leal	9035900
Williams Fork Above Darling Creek	9035700
Colorado River Below Baker Gulch	9010500
Williams Fork Near Leal	9036000
Taylor River at Taylor Park	9107000
Williams Fork Near Parshall	9037500

*Table 2-4: Flow Alteration Module Case Studies*

Site	Analysis	Alteration Type	Notes	FAM Score*
Joe Wright Reservoir	Upstream vs. Downstream	Reservoir	1977 to 2017	0.38
Fraser River at Winter Park	Two Period	Transmountain diversion	1911 to 1935 vs 1988 to 2017	0.57
Williams Fork Reservoir	Upstream vs. Downstream	Reservoir	1992 to 2017	0.40
Williams Fork Reservoir	Upstream vs. Downstream	Reservoir	1966 to 1991	0.29
Taylor Park Reservoir	Upstream vs. Downstream	Reservoir	1988 to 2017	0.25
Colorado-Big Thompson Project	Two Period	Reservoirs and Transmountain Diversion	1908 to 1949 vs 1988 to 2017	0.45
Paonia Reservoir	Two Period	Reservoir	1934 to 1958 vs 1993 to 2017	0.73
Yampa River at Steamboat Springs	Two Period	Reservoir	1905 to 1944 vs 1988 to 2017	0.99
Colorado River Below Baker Gulch	Two Period	None	1953 to 1983 vs 1987 to 2017	0.94
Halfmoon Creek Near Malta	Two Period	None	1947 to 1981 vs 1983 to 2017	0.79
South Fork Williams Fork Near Leal	Two Period	None	1966 to 1991 vs 1992 to 2017	0.97
Williams Fork Above Darling Creek	Two Period	None	1966 to 1991 vs 1992 to 2017	0.90
Williams Fork Near Leal	Two Period	None	1934 to 1963 vs 1966 to 1991	1.00
Williams Fork Near Leal	Two Period	None	1966 to 1991 vs 1992 to 2017	1.00
Williams Fork Near Leal	Two Period	None	1934 to 1963 vs 1992 to 2017	0.99

\* Case studies did not include the 7-day minimum metric.

Generally, the altered sites had metric field values that fell within the not-functioning or functioning-at-risk range of index values which yielded overall module scores ranging from 0.25 to 0.57. Two of the altered sites yielded overall module scores in the functioning range of scoring. The highest scoring altered site is the Yampa River at Steamboat Springs, which is affected by mainstem dams at Lake Catamount and Stagecoach reservoir but has a relatively intact flow regime, with only moderately altered peak and late summer flows. The irrigation withdrawals are likely buffered by alluvial storage in the floodplain that maintains baseflow into the late season. This was consistent with the module score for that site (0.99). The Paonia Reservoir site on the North Fork Gunnison River also yielded a functioning module score (0.73). The August and September flows were significantly diminished, scoring 0.43 and 0.21 respectively, while the other three metrics scored 1.00. For the altered sites, mean Annual Q was most altered at sites with trans-mountain diversions and main-channel reservoirs, as were mean August Q, mean September Q, and mean January Q.

Module scores for the minimally altered sites ranged from 0.79 to 1.00 (Table 2-4). Some of these sites exhibited relatively high degrees of altered January Q, but this may be related to data quality associated with ice, seasonally unavailable gage data, or because relative error increases as the magnitude of the flows decreases. Metric field values for these sites mostly fell within the functioning range of index values for the reference curves, indicating that although they may have some anthropogenic modification, the modification was minimal.

#### Limitations and Data Gaps:

Recognizing the level of effort that is typically undertaken to develop environmental flow standards, this is a very simplified approach. Because a single reference curve was applied for all metrics, the reference curve may not accurately capture the hydrologic conditions that support geomorphic, physicochemical, and biology functioning in all streams. Zorn et al. (2008) noted that some rivers in Michigan are more sensitive to withdrawals than others and Richter (2012) notes that the presumptive standard may not be sufficient to protect ecological values in smaller or intermittent streams. Application across multiple flow regimes is needed to determine whether additional stratification, alternate metrics or refined reference curves are needed.

The module is also limited in that it does not characterize all ecologically relevant aspects of the flow regime (Poff et al. 1997, Mathews and Richter 2007). Baseflow hydroperiod and patterns during the winter can have important ramifications for the biological community, especially fish populations. A more comprehensive approach to evaluating flow alteration may be needed to adequately characterize other aspects of the flow regime (Annear et al. 2004, Poff et al. 2010) and this flow alteration module should not be used as a substitute for these more rigorous analyses. Furthermore, the metrics currently included in the flow alteration module are primarily tailored to hydrologic regimes that have a large snowmelt signature. Adaptation of the module for application in non-snowmelt systems should be made on a case-specific basis and should consider the dominant or important aspects of the hydrologic regime, given local variation in climate and other process drivers.

The flow alteration module requires three separate datasets in its current configuration: native hydrology, current hydrology, and proposed hydrology. In some parts of the state, native hydrology may be difficult to quantify. Furthermore, hydrologic assessments range in complexity and magnitude of errors. Designers should have the expertise to perform these assessments and be able to analyze and defend the results.

## Chapter 3. Reach Runoff Parameter

Functional Category: Reach Hydrology & Hydraulics

Function-based Parameter Summary:

This parameter focuses on the hydrologic transport of water from the portion of the catchment that drains laterally into the reach. Changes in land cover, land use, and stormwater routing within the lateral drainage area can impact water quality (sediment, nutrients or other pollutants) as well as the magnitude, duration, frequency, timing, and rate of change of runoff hydrographs entering the project reach (Beechie et al. 2012; ELI and TNC 2014).

This parameter addresses runoff from the lateral drainage area, characterizing direct inputs from the adjacent watershed area. This parameter does not characterize runoff from the contributing watershed upstream of the project reach. A broad characterization of the upstream contributing catchment is used to evaluate process drivers and restoration potential (see Section 1.3) but is not directly scored within the CSQT. Flow regime represents cumulative watershed processes and can be especially important where projects alter hydrology within or beyond the project reach (see Flow Alteration Module, Chapter 2).

The lateral drainage area impacts the amount of runoff and the pollutants entrained and transported to the receiving stream reach. For example, multiple studies have shown that increases in impervious cover are linked to decreased stream health (Schueler et al. 2009), while agricultural practices can contribute sediment, nutrients, and other pollutants (USEPA 2005). The lateral drainage area plays a role in supporting the structure and function of stream ecosystems described by Fischenich (2006): maintaining surface water storage processes, surface/subsurface water exchange, quality and quantity of sediments, necessary aquatic and riparian habitats, water and soil quality, and landscape pathways. Including this parameter in the CSQT incentivizes stormwater management and land management practices on a reach-scale that can contribute to cumulative progress in a larger watershed.

The WSQT v1.0 included land use coefficient and concentrated flow points metrics under this parameter. Two additional metrics were considered for the CSQT, impervious cover and water quality capture volume (WQCV), to address some of the limitations of the existing metrics. These metrics were removed following beta testing of the CSQT to simplify the tool. Instead of including both a land use coefficient and impervious cover metric, the land use coefficients were revised to simplify the land use categories and incorporate impervious cover. WQCV was removed because the metric is one of several measured in Colorado to capture runoff reduction; therefore, the metric failed to adequately represent practices employed to reduce reach runoff impacts.

The land use coefficient metric quantifies anthropogenic land use and land covers that alter the hydrologic processes within the lateral drainage area. Land use changes can alter interception, infiltration, evapotranspiration, snowpack distribution and melting, and runoff routing and is thus an indicator of changes to magnitude, volume, rate of change, and frequency of the full spectrum of flow events.

The concentrated flow points metric addresses practices that result in impacts to storm-flow routing, typically increasing water velocities to more effectively drain the landscape. This metric was developed to address large lateral drainage areas where restoration practices limited to the riparian corridor may not have measurable changes to the land use coefficient field value in the

CSQT. However, larger lateral drainage areas are likely to have more concentrated flows. Therefore, the land use coefficient and concentrated flow metrics are intended to be applied together.

Metrics:

- Land Use Coefficient
- Concentrated Flow Points

### **3.1 Land Use Coefficient**

Summary:

The CSQT uses an area-weighted land use coefficient to numerically quantify the impact of various land uses on reach runoff. The metric is calculated by delineating areas of different land uses within the lateral drainage area of a stream reach, assigning a land use coefficient to these areas, and then calculating an area-weighted coefficient.

Land use coefficients are based on curve numbers (CN) developed by the NRCS in Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds (NRCS 1986), commonly known as the TR-55. CN values presented in TR-55 are determined based on soils, plant cover, amount of impervious areas, interception, and surface storage (NRCS 1986). Higher CN values, nearer 100, indicate more runoff potential and lower values, nearer 0, indicate less runoff potential. Runoff curve numbers are determined by comparing land use cover descriptions with hydrologic soil groups (TR-55, 1986). The curve numbers for urban land uses trends higher than agricultural lands depending on the percent of impervious cover associated with various cover type descriptions. Therefore, as the lateral drainage area is cultivated or developed, curve number and runoff potential increases.

Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

To focus solely on land use change rather than infiltration capacity of soils, land use coefficients used in the CSQT were adapted from TR-55 and applied across generalized land use descriptors. Curve numbers corresponding to one hydrologic soil group, group B, were selected. Group B was selected because soils outside of the riparian corridor generally correspond to hydrologic soil groups A and B. Additionally, riparian land cover is proportionally smaller than non-riparian cover in a watershed. To be more conservative, hydrologic soil group B, which exhibits moderate infiltration rates when wetted and moderately to well drained soils, was selected as a representative soil instead of A, which exhibits high infiltration rates when wetted and well to excessively drained soils (USDA and NRCS 2007). Then, in order to simplify land cover descriptions, the curve number corresponding to “good condition” (or average of curve numbers when applicable), were assigned for the simplified land use descriptions. A table of land use coefficients is presented in Table 3-1 and in the user manual.

**Table 3-1: Land use descriptors and coefficients.**

Land Use Description	Land Use Coefficient
<b>Natural</b>	
Forested or scrub-shrub vegetation communities	55
Herbaceous communities	62
Open water	0
<b>Urban</b>	
Open space (for example lawns, golf courses, parks, etc.)	61
Impervious areas	98
<b>Agricultural</b>	
Pasture, grassland, or range	61
Row crops	74

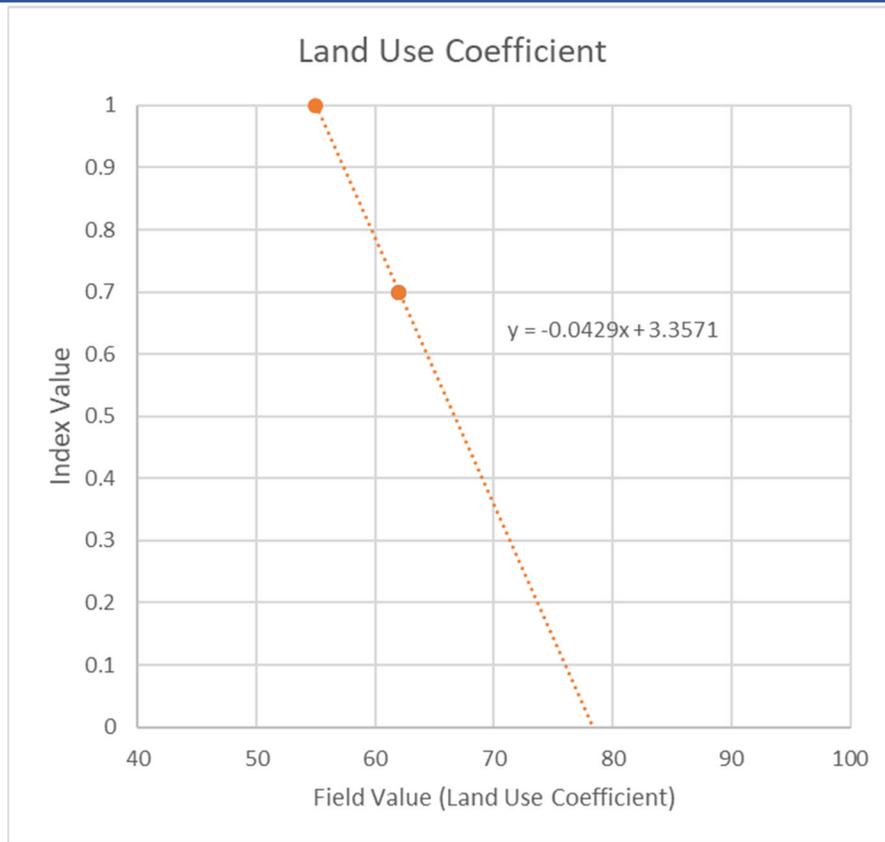
To develop a reference curve associated with land use changes, composite (lateral drainage area-weighted) land use coefficients that correspond to natural land cover (55-62) were considered to represent a functioning range of index values (0.70-1.00), with the lower coefficient (55) assigned an index value of 1.00 and the higher coefficient (62) assigned an index value of 0.7 (Table 3-2). The slope of the line was then extrapolated down to an index value of 0.00.

Stratification of reference curves by reference riparian vegetation cover type (woody or herbaceous) was considered since herbaceous communities have less roughness and potentially higher runoff rates than forested communities, but this stratification was not used since the reference riparian vegetation community rarely extends to the entire drainage area and thus, would not be representative of the area-weighted land use coefficient for the entire lateral drainage area.

A broken-linear curve was applied for this metric (Figure 3-1). The curve is steeper in the not-functioning and functioning-at-risk range of scoring than in the functioning range, allowing for a broader range of land use coefficients within the functioning range to account for natural variability.

**Table 3-2: Threshold Values for Land Use Coefficients**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	55
0.70	62



**Figure 3-1: Reference Curves for Land Use Coefficient**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric does not account for the variation in infiltration capacity, impermeable layer depth, or other characteristics important to estimating runoff volumes. Additionally, the land use coefficients do not account for relative pollution loads coming from different land uses.

There are limitations of scale associated with this metric as the size of the project easement or area compared to the size of the lateral drainage area will influence how much index scores may change in response to land use changes in the project area. Reaches with larger lateral drainage areas would need to acquire and revegetate more land to achieve a similar amount of lift as a project with a smaller lateral drainage area.

Similarly, there are limitations related to the size of the project easement or area compared to the size of the upstream catchment - the larger the contributing catchment area upstream, the less of an influence the lateral drainage has in maintaining stream functions within the project reach. For example, a reach located far downstream from the headwaters may be more affected by hydrologic changes occurring upstream than from land use change in the lateral drainage area. Alternatively, improving land use condition in small streams near the headwaters may have a greater relative effect. These limitations could be addressed through stratification and development of additional reference curves. Considering relative catchment location (e.g., the proportion of land area within the lateral drainage area compared with the entire catchment area) could account for the relative impact of direct drainage to the channel vs. in-channel delivery from upstream.

Stratification based on natural land use types may also improve this metric. Natural land cover

varies in runoff and infiltration potential. For example, natural grasslands function differently than pinyon-juniper forests, with different curve numbers and land use coefficients, but both may represent a pristine or reference standard condition. Also, this metric may be less sensitive to changes between natural land cover types and developed land uses where natural land use coefficients are more similar to developed land use types. Stratification would better account for these differences.

This metric has received limited testing and would benefit from additional application and testing in Colorado. It would also benefit from sensitivity testing and comparison to other indicators of altered stream processes, including percent impervious surface, particularly in areas with more urban development.

### **3.2 Concentrated Flow Points**

#### **Summary:**

This metric assesses the number of concentrated flow points that enter the project reach from adjacent land uses per 1,000 linear feet of stream. The adjacent land use is assessed from the upstream to downstream ends of the project reach. Concentrated flow points are defined as erosional or constructed features (e.g., concrete swales, rills, gullies, ditches, or other conveyances) created by anthropogenic modifications on the landscape that alter or concentrate runoff into the stream. These types of features can be caused by agricultural practices that result in irrigation return flow or grading activities associated with roads or construction sites. The concentrated flow point channelizes water that would otherwise flow towards the stream channel as sheetflow, throughflow or groundwater. Alterations in runoff processes associated with land use changes are common, particularly due to changes in or removal of vegetation; increased impervious surface area; soil compaction and decreased infiltration; and interception of subsurface flows and routing to streams (Beechie et al. 2012).

Overland flow typically erodes soils relatively slowly through sheet flow; however, anthropogenic impacts can lead to concentrated flows that erode soils quickly, transporting water and sediment into receiving stream channels (Al-Hamdan et al. 2013). Three primary drivers that cause sheet flow to transition to concentrated flow include discharge, bare soil fraction, and slope angle (Al-Hamdan et al. 2013). Anthropogenic changes to runoff characteristics often create new conveyances, where flows are concentrated and routed more quickly to streams. Channels are also constructed to drain the landscape, e.g. agricultural ditches or concrete swales connecting parking lots to stream channels and gutter systems to route rain-water away from structures. Even hiking or game trails can intercept and concentrate runoff.

Stream restoration projects can reduce concentrated flow that directly enters the project reach by dispersing flow in the floodplain, increasing surface roughness, regrading to flatten slopes, removing roads and ditches, filling ditches, and restoring riparian vegetation. Development can negatively impact streams by creating new concentrated flow points such as stormwater outfalls. Stormwater best management practices can be used to address these outfalls, enhance infiltration, and reduce outfall velocity.

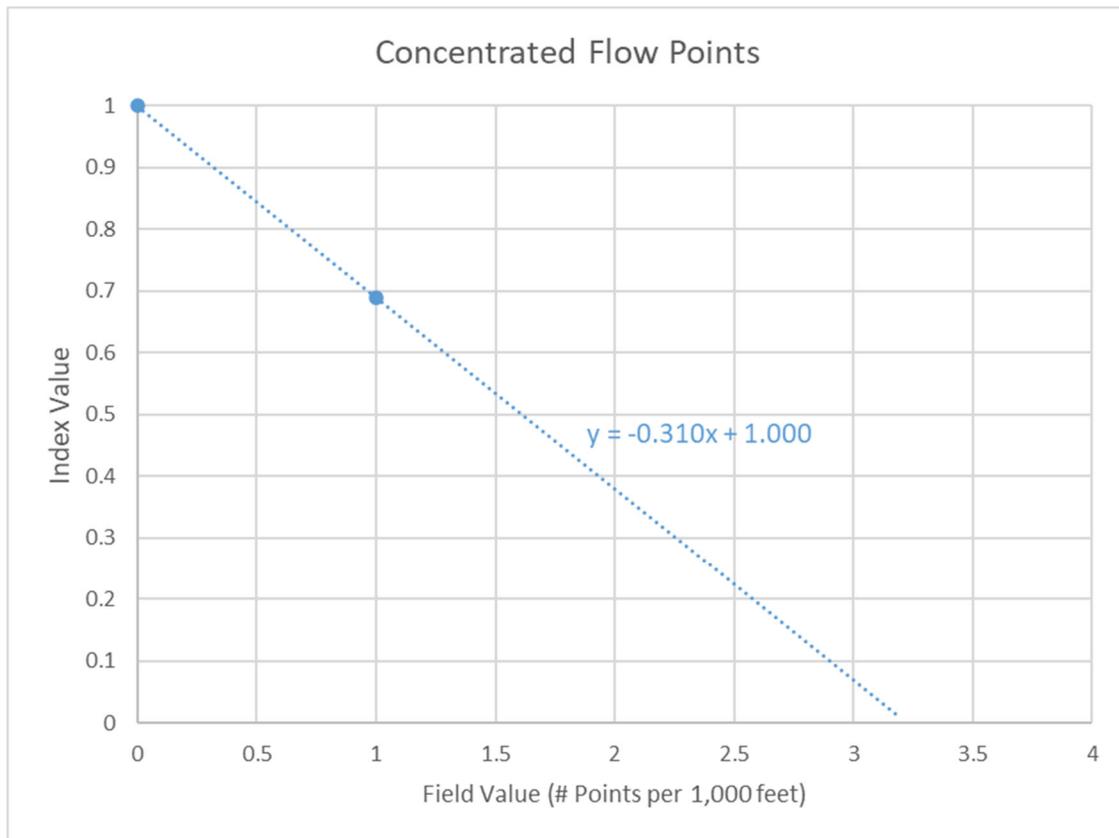
#### **Reference Curve Development:**

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the NC SQT and WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

The threshold values for this metric were based on best professional judgement, as literature values were not available that quantified relationships between the number of concentrated flow points and stream stability or aquatic life. However, there is a clear negative relationship between concentrated flows and degradation of stream stability and aquatic life (Hammer 1972). It was assumed by the steering committee that the absence of anthropogenic concentrated flow points reflected a pristine condition and that the presence of one concentrated flow point per 1,000 ft would be the limit for a functioning condition. Concentrated flow points of greater than 1 per 1,000 feet were assumed to no longer reflected a reference standard condition. Based on this logic, the threshold values shown in Table 3-3 were created, and a linear curve was fit to these values (Figure 3-2).

**Table 3-3: Threshold Values for Concentrated Flow Points**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	0
0.69	1



**Figure 3-2: Reference Curve for Concentrated Flow Points**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric does not consider the type or size of the concentrated flow points, only the number. Considering the cumulative volume of runoff water produced by the flow points, differences in their

type, or their contributing drainage area relative to the lateral drainage area would make this a more meaningful metric. For example, one large concentrated flow point may deliver more water (with lower quality) than three or more small conveyances.

There are other limitations of using a simple count per linear foot of stream. For example, a practitioner could be incentivized to take three concentrated flow points, merge them together, and create one larger flow point, which may not result in any actual improvements in the stream condition. Alternatively, if the project includes restoration of natural sinuosity but does not reduce the number of concentrated flow points, the tool would show lift solely as a result of the increased channel length, rather than an attempt by the practitioner to reduce the actual number of concentrated flow points. However, these limitations can be addressed by creating rules in the user manual that do not allow practitioners to merge or ignore concentrated flow points.

This metric was developed for use in the North Carolina SQT and was incorporated, unchanged, into the CSQT v1.0 and WSQT v1.0. Because it is a relatively new metric, it will need additional testing and review as it is applied to project sites, particularly in degraded stream reaches and urban areas. This metric was initially intended to compliment the land use coefficient metric and incentivize reach scale practices that improve infiltration and runoff processes of the land that drains directly into the stream reach from the lateral drainage area.

## Chapter 4. Baseflow Dynamics Parameter

Functional Category: Reach Hydrology & Hydraulics

Function-based Parameter Summary:

The baseflow dynamics function-based parameter was added to the CSQT to capture the ecological effects that changing channel dimensions has on baseflow habitat. This parameter will incentivize multi-stage channels and capture the impacts of channel widening. Hydraulic habitat modeling is a useful tool for understanding the baseflow dynamics necessary to maintain optimal habitat for biota and is one of several common approaches to evaluate environmental flow requirements in streams (Acreman and Dunbar 2004). There are many approaches available to characterize useable habitat area and baseflow dynamics (Espegren 1996, Annear et al. 2004), and some newer approaches are being developed to reduce the cost and level of effort associated with many existing methods (Wilding et al. 2014). Several hydraulic metrics have been identified as critical components of habitat maintenance flows and have been used for several decades in Colorado to inform minimum flow guidelines (Nehring 1979; Espegren 1996).

Baseflow is the flow within an intermittent or perennial stream that is sustained between higher magnitude peaks in the hydrograph (e.g., following snowmelt or other precipitation events). The objective of this parameter is to characterize habitat conditions within the reach during baseflow conditions. Baseflow is characterized in this parameter using the average of the mean daily flow values during the low flow period, typically in the late summer or early fall of the monitoring year. While the flow dynamics above baseflow (small flow pulses, bankfull flows, etc.) shape the channel, baseflow plays an important role in supporting water quality, water supply, and habitat (Price 2011). Baseflow volume and dynamics impact contaminant concentrations, water temperature, and available habitat area.

Two out of the three hydraulic parameters identified in Nehring (1979), average depth and average velocity, are included in the CSQT to characterize baseflow dynamics. This parameter requires evaluation of both metrics at riffle features within the reach. The CSQT SC considered percent of bankfull wetted perimeter for the CSQT Beta Version but the metric was not included in the final tool. While wetted perimeter is included in many models that determine minimum instream flow recommendations, it is not included in habitat suitability index models (HSI).

The parameter is optional and based on the reference standards outlined below, is currently only applicable to cold water streams. Additional updates are planned for this parameter. Due to the difficulty of setting reference standards that are applicable to various species assemblages for multiple life stages, the CSQT SC decided to keep the parameter in the CSQT and continue research to broaden its applicability.

Metrics:

- Average Velocity (fps)
- Average Depth (ft)

## **4.1 Average Velocity**

### Summary:

Baseflow velocity is a critical component of habitat maintenance flows. Riffle baseflow velocity has been found to directly affect macroinvertebrate survival and trout egg incubation (Nehring 1979).

The average velocity of a cross section at baseflow is calculated as the baseflow discharge divided by the wetted area at baseflow. For the CSQT, cross section surveys are collected at three riffle features and the results are averaged to determine an average riffle velocity at baseflow in the reach.

### Reference Curve Development:

Average velocity minimum criteria are presented in the Evaluation of Instream Flow Methods and Determination of Water Quantity Needs for Streams in the State of Colorado (Table 4-1; Nehring 1979).

**Table 4-1: Minimum Flow Requirements Over Riffles (Nehring 1979)**

<b>Bankfull Width (ft)</b>	<b>Average Depth (ft)</b>	<b>Percent Wetted Perimeter* (%)</b>	<b>Average Velocity (fps)</b>
1-20	0.2	50	1.0
21-40	0.2-0.4	50	1.0
41-60	0.4-0.6	50-60	1.0
61-100	0.6-1.0	≥70	1.0
<i>* Baseflow wetted perimeter as a percent of bankfull.</i>			

Due to the varying velocity requirements for multiple species during different life stages, a reference curve was not developed for the velocity metric. Instead, the average velocity for the minimum flow requirements developed by Nehring (1979) was used to calculate the parameter score. Where velocities are less than 1.0 fps, the parameter will score a 0.00, regardless of the field values for average depth metric. Where velocities exceed the 1.0 fps, they will not influence or inform the parameter score. Note that there may be settings where this parameter should not be applied because average velocities are naturally below this minimum flow value.

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric has received limited testing and would benefit from additional application and testing in Colorado. Future versions of the tool may consider whether a more comprehensive approach to characterizing velocity may be useful.

## **4.2 Average Depth**

### Summary:

Depth is one of the most important hydraulic criteria for maintaining fish passage (Nehring 1979). Nehring (1979) concluded that “average depth should be the primary criterion on which minimum flow recommendations are determined since it is the first factor to become limiting in almost twice as many instances as average velocity and wetted perimeter combined.”

The average depth of a cross section at baseflow is calculated as the wetted cross-sectional area divided by the wetted top width. For the CSQT, cross section surveys are collected at three riffle features and the results are averaged to determine an average depth at baseflow in the reach.

Reference Curve Development:

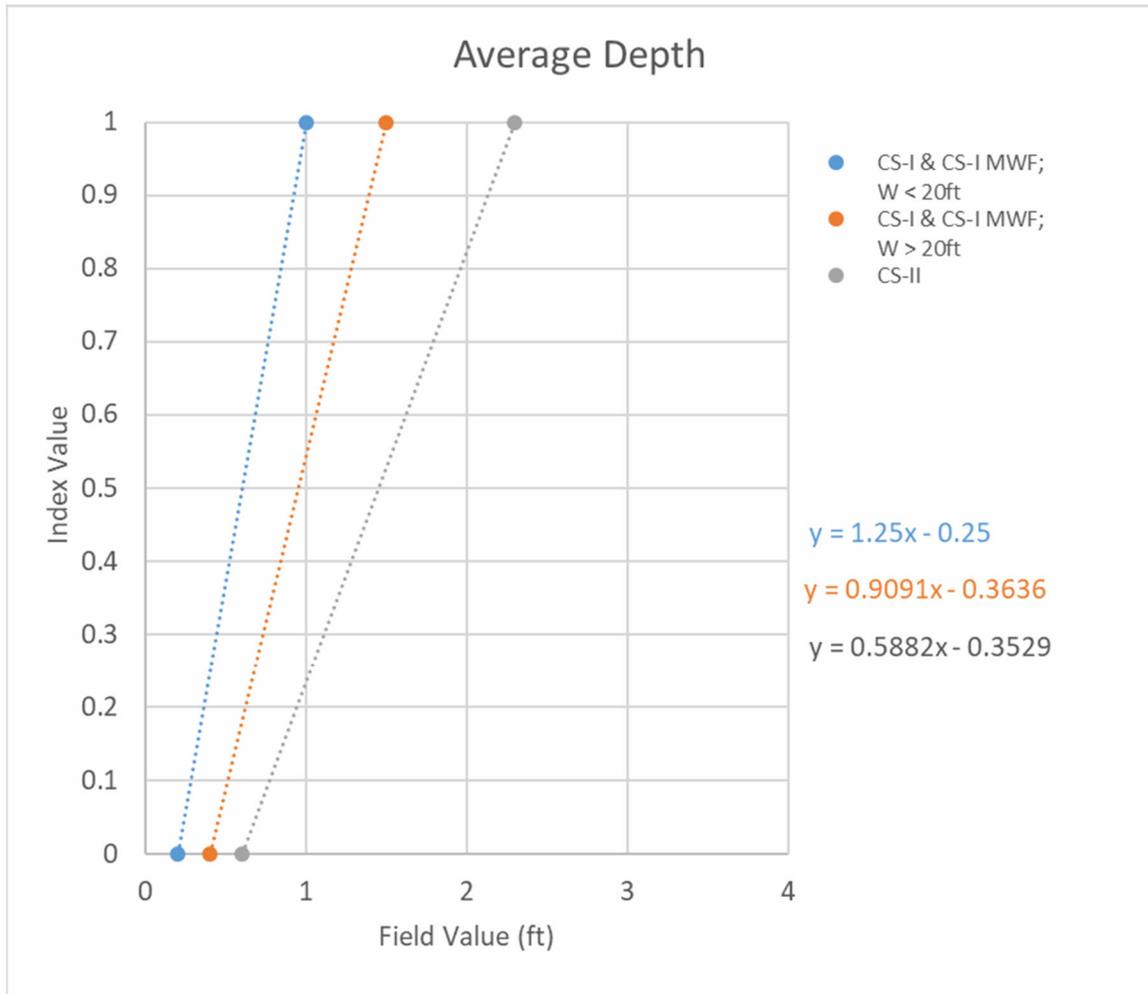
Reference curves were developed using established minimum flow criteria, as well as average depth criteria from Habitat Suitability Index models. The minimum flow criteria shown in Table 4-1 were used to define the minimum index value of 0.00, as these criteria consider the maximum body depth of the largest fish present.

Habitat Suitability Indices (HSI) are similar to the SQT in that they score metrics on a 0.0 to 1.0 scale. HSI for multiple species were reviewed (Hickman and Raleigh 1982, Raleigh 1982, Raleigh et al. 1984, Raleigh et al. 1986, Wesche et al. 1987, Shuler and Nehring 1993) and the 1.00 scores from the average depth HSI variable were used to inform the maximum index value of 1.00 in the CSQT (Table 4-2). Where differences between HSI results occurred between species or studies, maximum index values were selected following consultation with CPW fisheries biologists.

Reference curves are stratified by stream width and temperature tier as shown in Table 4-2 and Figure 4-1. Additional consideration may be given to additional stratification by life stage following additional research and testing.

*Table 4-2: Threshold Values for Average Depth*

Index Value	Field Values by Bankfull Width and Temperature Tier		
	CS-I & W < 20 ft	CS-I & W > 20ft	CS-II
1.00	1.0	1.5	2.3
0.00	0.2	0.4	0.6



**Figure 4-1: Reference Curves for Average Depth**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

Nehring (1979) notes that transect-based R2CROSS methods do not have a direct link to the biological condition of a stream. For this metric, we have relied on habitat preferences identified in Habitat Suitability Index models, recognizing that some of these curves may be outdated or not representative of the habitat needs for all life stages of fish. Newer curves are available for some species and life stages and additional updates to this parameter may be needed as new information is available in the literature, including stratification or additional metrics to capture the habitat suitability for different life stages. For example, Allyón et al. (2010) does not propose upper limit depth criteria for adult brown trout, while Louhi et al. (2008) suggest shallower depths are necessary to support brown trout spawning.

## Chapter 5. Floodplain Connectivity Parameter

Functional Category: Reach Hydrology & Hydraulics

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Floodplain connectivity is one of the most important function-based parameters for stream restoration work (Fischenich 2006) because it is a driver for many geomorphic and ecological functions (Wohl 2004). The floodplain of a stream is the area commonly inundated during high flows or floods. Harman et al. (2012) provide detailed definitions and examples of floodplains and flood prone areas. For example, floodplains consist of alluvium and are associated with meandering streams in alluvial valleys. Bankfull benches are narrower than floodplains and exist in confined or colluvial valleys. Bankfull benches are flat depositional features that provide some energy dissipation for higher flows.

When a channel is connected to its floodplain, flood flows can inundate the floodplain and spread out across the landscape while in-channel velocities can maintain bed forms without excessive erosion. While it is a common perception that a straight and deep channel can move flood waters quickly downstream, channelization often displaces flooding and increases flood damage downstream of the channelization (Schoof 1980). Channels that are not connected to their floodplain lose the capacity to store water and sediment in the floodplain during large storm or snowmelt events. The functional loss associated with channelization and berm or levee construction is not limited to displaced flooding, but can also lead to loss of bed form diversity, downcutting and incision, increased erosion, and loss of fish species and biomass (Darby and Thornes 1992; Hupp 1992; Kroes and Hupp 2010; Richer et al. 2015; Kondratieff and Richer 2018). Severely incised channels can also lower the local water table, draining riparian wetlands or otherwise impacting the local riparian community (Harman et al. 2012). In a comparison between an incised stream and a similar, non-incised stream, the incised stream had significantly higher turbidity, solids, total nitrogen, phosphorous and chlorophyll concentrations, and lower fish diversity and biomass than the non-incised stream (Shields et al. 2010).

The SFPP (Harman et al. 2012) describes three measurement methods for the floodplain connectivity parameter: bank height ratio (BHR), entrenchment ratio (ER), and stage-discharge relationships. BHR is a surrogate measure of channel incision and the relative frequency that flood flows could reach the floodplain, while ER estimates the lateral extent of floodplain inundation (Rosgen 1996). Together these metrics can be used to characterize floodplain connectivity.

A side channel metric has been developed for the floodplain connectivity parameter in the CSQT, recognizing the importance of side channels (e.g. sloughs and side channels, natural chute cut offs, and connecting oxbow ponds) to hydraulic and geomorphic functioning in unconfined alluvial valleys. While side channels provide many habitat functions, they also connect the main channel to the floodplain through the hyporheic zone, fostering water transfers between the surface and subsurface (Arrigoni et al. 2018; Burkholder et al. 2008; Oct et al. 2015; Fernald et al. 2006). Thus, including side channels as a metric for floodplain connectivity emphasizes their role in distributing water on the floodplain and through sediments.

The CSQT Beta Version implemented stage-discharge relationships as a return interval metric. This metric was removed following beta testing and procedures to identify and verify bankfull were added to the User Manual. Procedures to verify bankfull include scenarios where flow alteration rather than incision has reduced floodplain connectivity.

The BHR, ER, and side channel metrics were selected for use in the tool. The BHR and ER combination are based on physical measurements (practitioners and regulators can measure in the field) and rely on a bankfull verification. The percent side channels metric would be used in addition to the other metrics when side channels are a desirable and appropriate end state for the project reach or would naturally exist in the given valley type. Each metric is described in more detail below.

Metrics:

- Bank Height Ratio
- Entrenchment Ratio
- Percent Side Channels

### **5.1 Bank Height Ratio**

Summary:

The bank height ratio (BHR) is a measure of channel incision, or the degree to which flood flows can access (are connected to) an active floodplain or bankfull bench. The BHR is defined as the depth from the top of the low bank (the lowest identifiable bank) to the thalweg divided by the depth from the bankfull elevation to the thalweg (Rosgen 1996). In a stable high functioning stream with ideal floodplain connectivity, the bank height (depth) should be equal to the bankfull height (depth); in other words, the bankfull discharge is just contained within the bankfull channel and discharges greater than bankfull will access the floodplain or bankfull bench (Rosgen 2009). Therefore, the BHR relates the stage of the flow that can access the adjacent floodplain (in alluvial valleys) or bankfull bench (in colluvial valleys) to the bankfull stage. For example, a BHR of 2.0 means that it takes two times the bankfull stage for flows to access the floodplain, indicating the stream is incised and disconnected from its former floodplain.

For the CSQT, BHR is measured at every riffle in the sampling reach, and a length-weighted BHR is then calculated from these measurements. The weighted bank height ratio is preferred over a simple average to increase precision and repeatability. Methods for data collection and metric calculation are in the CSQT User Manual.

Simon and Rinaldi (2006) found that while non-incised channels dissipate some of the erosive energy of high flows across the floodplain, incised channels within the same region contain flows of greater magnitude and recurrence interval. Greater BHR values are characteristic of an unstable condition, deeper and often wider channels, and higher return interval for flows leaving the channel. As greater flows with increased erosive power are confined to the channel, BHR increases as the streambed lowers or degrades. Active degradation is often signaled by head cutting (bed erosion manifested as a step or sudden grade drop that propagates headward), downstream of which the BHR is increased, resulting in even larger floods being contained in the channel, and decreasing floodplain connectivity as the channel evolves through predictable stages (Cluer and Thorne 2013). Sullivan and Watzin (2009) found that measurements of bank height ratio, as an indicator of floodplain connectivity, were significantly correlated to fish assemblage diversity.

Reference Curve Development:

**Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in CO.**

The BHR metric was developed by Rosgen (2009) as a measure of channel incision as shown in Table 5-1. Harman, et al. (2012) translated channel incision descriptions from Rosgen (2009) into functioning, functioning-at-risk, and not-functioning categories that indicate the degree of incision and the relative functional capacity of incised streams (Table 5-1).

**Table 5-1: Bank Height Ratio Categories**

Channel incision descriptions by Rosgen (2009)		Performance standards by Harman et al. (2012)	
BHR	Degree of Channel Incision	BHR	Functional Capacity
1.0 – 1.1	Stable	1.0 – 1.3*	Functioning
1.1 – 1.3	Slightly Incised		
1.3 – 1.5	Moderately Incised	1.3 – 1.5	Functioning-At-Risk
1.5 – 2.0	Deeply Incised	> 1.5	Not-Functioning

*\* Original reference listed functioning as 1.0-1.2, value has been revised for continuity between categories.*

The BHR categories from Rosgen (2009) and Harman et. al (2012) were compared to the WY geomorphic reference dataset described in Section 1.8. The WY geomorphic reference dataset consists of 61 sites that report BHR (Table 5-2). Because bank height ratio was used as a quality assurance measure in compiling the dataset, sites that would be considered deeply incised (BHR greater than 1.5) were not included in the reference dataset. About three-quarters of the sites from this dataset had a BHR of less than 1.2.

**Table 5-2: Statistics for BHR from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Statistic	BHR
Number of Sites (n)	54
Average	1.09
Standard Deviation	0.11
Minimum	1.00
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	1.00
Median	1.00
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	1.19
Maximum	1.50

Stratification by sediment regime has been incorporated into the CSQT v1.0. The reach sediment regime is input into the CSQT as: source, transport, or response based on the classification outlined in Montgomery and Buffington (1993).

Stratification by stream size is built into the metric by using the bankfull depth as the denominator. Bankfull depth varies throughout the country due to differences in climate and runoff characteristics; however, there are predictable, documented relationships that predict bankfull dimensions for streams in the same physiographic or hydrologic region (Dunne and Leopold 1978; Blackburn-Lynch et al. 2017; Torizzo and Pitlick 2004). Stratification by valley type was considered to address differences in floodplains, e.g., between alluvial and colluvial valleys. However, because this metric focuses on the ability of flood flows to access areas outside the channel and not the extent of floodplain inundation, the decision was made not to stratify by valley type.

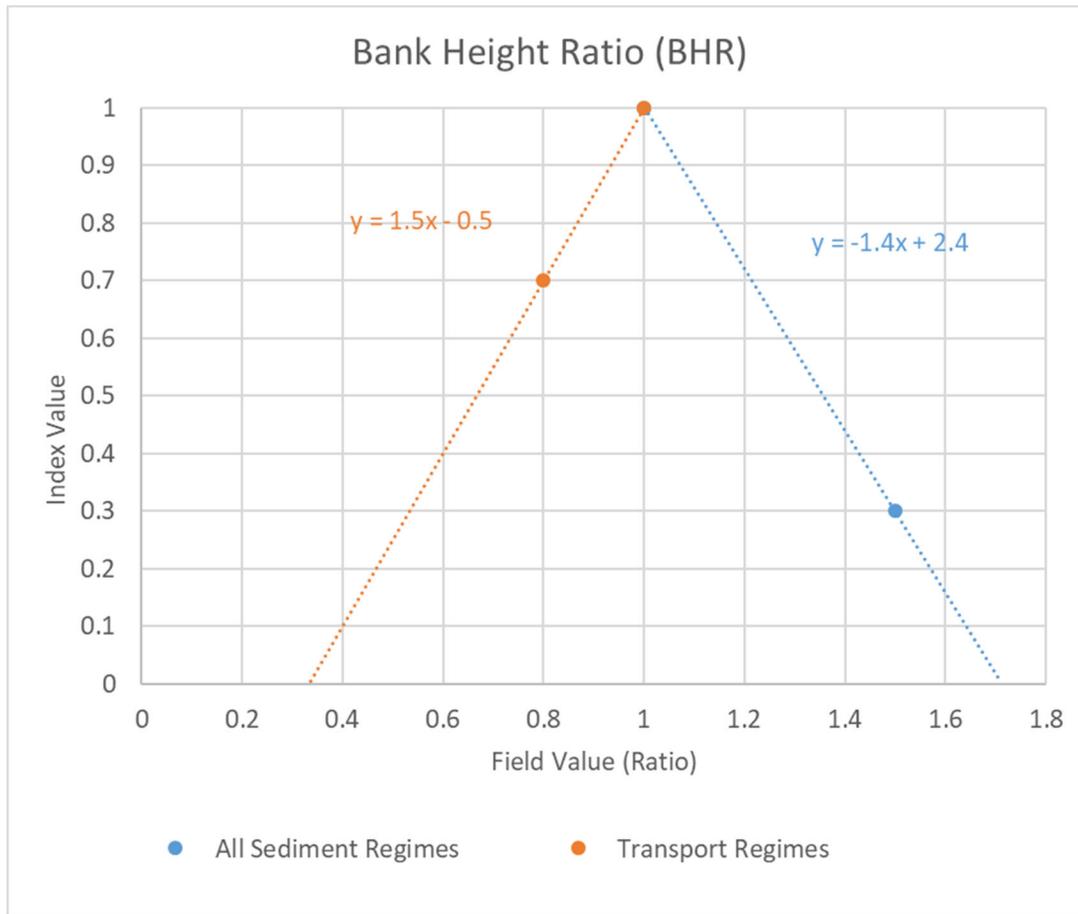
A threshold of 1.5 was used to differentiate index values within the functioning-at-risk and not-functioning ranges. BHRs of greater than 1.5 were considered not-functioning, consistent with the supporting literature classifying these as deeply incised channels with a greater likelihood of vertical instability (Rosgen 2009). Deeply incised streams (e.g., BHR > 1.7) provide extremely rare or no floodplain connectivity. A channel that contains any significant flood event, e.g., a 10-year or 25-year recurrence interval, is likely to experience significant erosion during a large precipitation event and transport water and sediment downstream instead of dispersing them across the floodplain.

While much of the discussion has focused on incision, a BHR of less than 1.0 in a transport setting, as opposed to a response or source setting, often results in instability. In a response regime, a BHR of less than 1.0 would indicate greater floodplain connection. In a transport regime, a BHR of less than 1.0 can lead to bed aggradation and widespread instability. Based on best professional judgement by members of the CSQT SC, a break between functioning-at-risk and functioning was set at a BHR value of 0.8 for transport sediment regimes.

The thresholds identified in Table 5-3 were plotted and a best-fit line was derived to provide a single equation to calculate index values from field values (Figure 5-1).

**Table 5-3: Threshold Values for Bank Height Ratio**

Index Value	Field Values by Sediment Regime	
	Transport	Source and Response
1.00	1.0	1.0
0.70	-	-, 0.8
0.30	1.5	1.5 , -



**Figure 5-1: Bank Height Ratio Reference Curve**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the bank height ratio will not accurately represent the incision processes. Information on verifying bankfull information is provided in the User Manual.

## **5.2 Entrenchment Ratio**

### Summary:

The entrenchment ratio (ER) is a ratio of the flood prone area width divided by the bankfull riffle width, where the flood prone area width is the width of the floodplain at a depth that is twice the bankfull maximum riffle depth (Rosgen 2009). The ER metric is based on physical measurements (i.e., can be measured in the field at any time), and can be assessed in any stream with a bankfull indicator or regional curve. Instructions for collecting and calculating the field value for this metric are provided in the User Manual.

ER estimates the lateral extent that floodwaters can spread across a valley. A stream is considered entrenched when flooding is horizontally confined, i.e. the flood prone width is small compared to the width of the channel. Large ERs are found in alluvial valleys where large flow events can spread out laterally. ER naturally varies by valley shape and is therefore used as a primary metric in differentiating stream types (Rosgen 1996). ER can also be a useful indicator of functional capacity as many anthropogenic alterations (e.g. levees, berms, and channelization) constrict the natural extent of floodplains and thereby decrease floodplain connectivity.

For F and G channels that represent degraded streams, these systems should be compared against the proposed, or reference stream type, as informed by channel evolution processes (Rosgen 2009) and described in the User Manual. For example, if the existing stream type is a degraded Gc in an alluvial valley, the proposed / reference stream type and reference curve would be a C or E stream type. Selection of the appropriate reference stream type is important for consistently applying this metric and determining a condition score in the tool. Guidance is provided in the User Manual to assist practitioners in identifying the reference stream type.

### Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

Entrenchment Ratio (ER) is a primary metric in determining the Rosgen stream type: entrenched stream types (A, G and F streams) have ER values less than  $1.4 \pm 0.2$ ; slightly entrenched stream types (E and C stream types) have ER values greater than  $2.2 \pm 0.2$ , and those in between are considered moderately entrenched (B stream types; Rosgen 1996). The values used to delineate between stream types were empirically based on data collected by Rosgen and by modeling a bankfull discharge and 50-year recurrence interval flood through typical cross sections representing various stream types. The ratio of the depth of the 50-year flood to the bankfull depth ranged from 1.3 to 2.7 for all stream types except D<sub>A</sub>'s, with less confined streams like E's having lower ratios (the larger the horizontal area floodwaters can occupy, the lower the difference in stage between a small flood and a large one). A "typical" ratio of 2.0 was selected to calculate the elevation of the flood prone width for all stream types, as a generalized comparison of confinement (Rosgen 1996).

Harman et al. (2012) translated the adjective descriptions of entrenchment used by Rosgen (1996) into functioning, functioning-at-risk, and not-functioning categories as shown in Table 5-4 after considering the differences among stream types. The performance standards were based on the stream type delineations listed above and the  $\pm 0.2$  that "allows for the continuum of channel form" (Rosgen 1996).

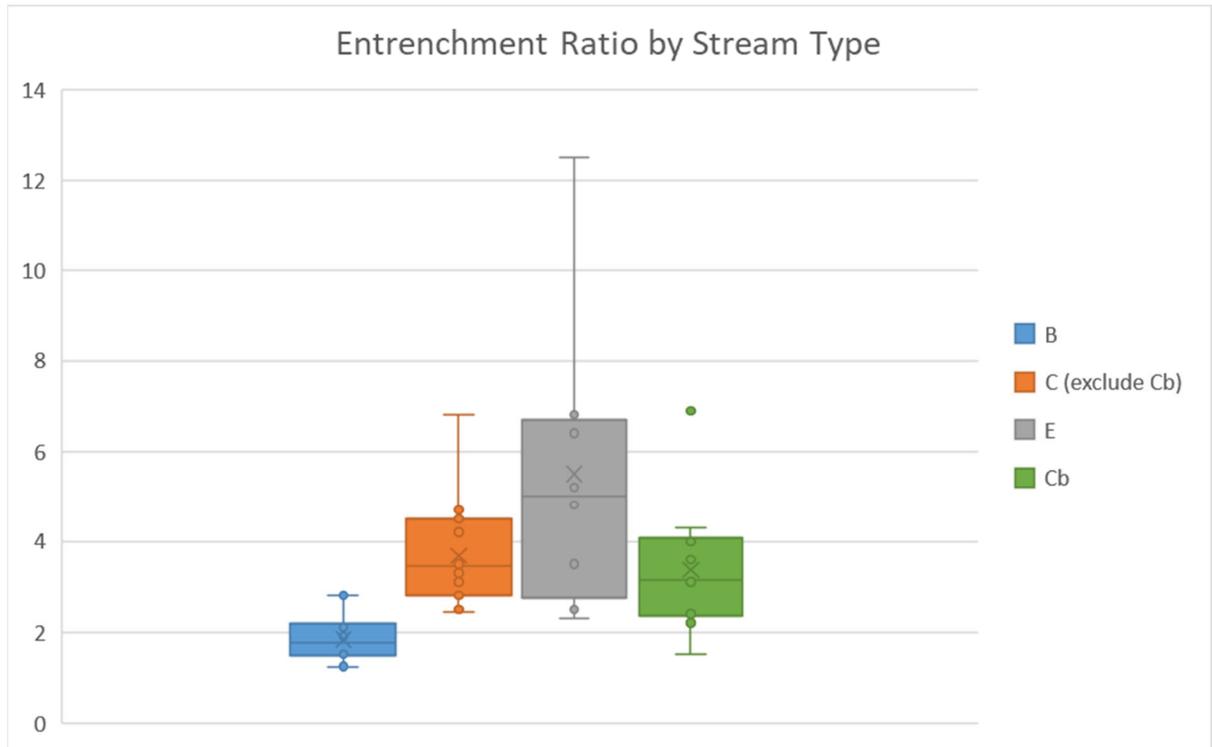
**Table 5-4: Entrenchment Ratio Performance Standards from Harman et al. (2012)**

ER for C and E Stream Types	ER for B and Bc Stream Types	Functional Capacity
> 2.2	> 1.4	Functioning
2.0 – 2.2	1.2 – 1.4	Functioning-At-Risk
< 2.0	< 1.2	Not-Functioning

The criteria proposed by Harman et al. (2012) were compared to the WY geomorphic reference dataset described in Section 1.8 of this manual. The WY geomorphic reference dataset consists of 61 sites that report ER. Of these sites, two C and one E stream ERs were identified as outliers and removed from the analysis and three sites were classified as F channels and were also removed from the analysis. The statistics for ER stratified by stream type are provided in Table 5-5 and Figure 5-2.

**Table 5-5: Statistics for ER from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Statistic	Stream Type			
	B	C	E	Cb
Number of Sites (n)	22	15	8	10
Average	1.8	3.7	5.5	3.4
Standard Deviation	0.5	1.1	3.3	1.5
Minimum	1.2	2.4	2.3	1.5
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	1.5	2.9	3.3	2.4
Median	1.8	3.5	5.0	3.2
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	2.2	4.4	6.5	3.9
Maximum	2.8	6.8	12.5	6.9



**Figure 5-2: Box Plots for ER from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Bankfull width was used as a denominator of this metric, and thus stratification by stream size was not needed. Scaling by bankfull width accounts for the differences in stream size that may otherwise be relevant in determining flood prone width. Bankfull dimensions vary greatly throughout the country due to differences in climate and runoff characteristics; however, bankfull regional curves can be used to calibrate field identifications (Blackburn-Lynch et al. 2017).

Stratification was needed to account for the natural variability in flood prone width, and therefore entrenchment ratios, across stream and valley types. Stream type was used to stratify the reference curves, and stream types were grouped into relevant valley types. Stream types in confined valleys naturally have low entrenchment ratios and include the following stream types: A, B, Ba, and Bc. Stream types in wider, alluvial valleys include C and E stream types. The WY geomorphic reference dataset did not include A stream types, but they are likely represented by confined-valley stream types as they naturally occur in confined valleys.

The performance standards from Table 5-4 were evaluated using the WY geomorphic reference dataset to develop the threshold values in Table 5-6.

For C and E stream types:

- C and E stream types were originally grouped together because they typically occur in the same valley types and C stream types have the potential to evolve into an E stream (Rosgen 2009).
- The ER of 2.0 proposed by Harman et al. (2012) as the threshold between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk is consistent with the criteria for C and E stream types in the classification system and was considered reasonable.

- Only one reference site in the dataset had an ER less than 2.0. This site is a Cb stream with a drainage area of 41 sq. mi. and ER of 1.5. Cb stream types were separated from other C stream types since Cb stream types are located in confined alluvial or colluvial valleys. The thresholds for not-functioning and functioning are the same for C and Cb streams, but the functioning maximum index score for Cb streams was set lower based on best professional judgement.
- An ER of 2.4 was used to define the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk for C and E stream types (Table 5-4). The WY geomorphic reference dataset supported this, as an ER of 2.4 was below the 25th percentile and conforms to the +/- 0.2 criterion for representing the continuum of river condition proposed by Rosgen (1996). Therefore, it was considered reasonable to use the upper end of the range provided by Rosgen (2009) for slightly entrenched stream types.
- In the WY geomorphic reference dataset, there was quite a bit of variability in the upper bounds of ER values for C and E stream types. So, E stream types were separated out from C and Cb stream types to define the maximum index score. As shown in Table 5-5, the 75th percentile for C, Cb and E stream types were 4.2, 3.9, and 6.7 respectively. These values were used to set the maximum index score.

For B stream types:

- The threshold between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk identified in Table 5-6 was consistent with the minimum ER observed for B stream types in the WY geomorphic reference dataset. Values less than 1.2 are outside the natural range of variability observed in stable B-type streams (Rosgen 2009; Harman et al. 2012), and thus an ER of 1.2 was assigned as the threshold between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning.
- An ER of 1.4 was selected as the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk by Harman et al. (2012) and was consistent with the 25th percentile value from the WY geomorphic reference dataset (1.5).
- The ER value that yields the maximum index value was set at 2.2, the 75th percentile value from the WY geomorphic reference dataset and the typical value used in the stream classification system as a break between B stream types and C and E stream types (Rosgen 2009).

The best-fit line for the plotted threshold values was derived using multiple linear relationships. The final reference curves are shown in Figure 5-3.

**Table 5-6: Threshold Values for Entrenchment Ratio**

Index Value	Field Values by Stream Type			
	B	C	E	Cb
1.00	2.2	4.2	6.7	3.9
0.70	1.4	2.4	2.4	2.4
0.30	1.2	2.0	2.0	2.0

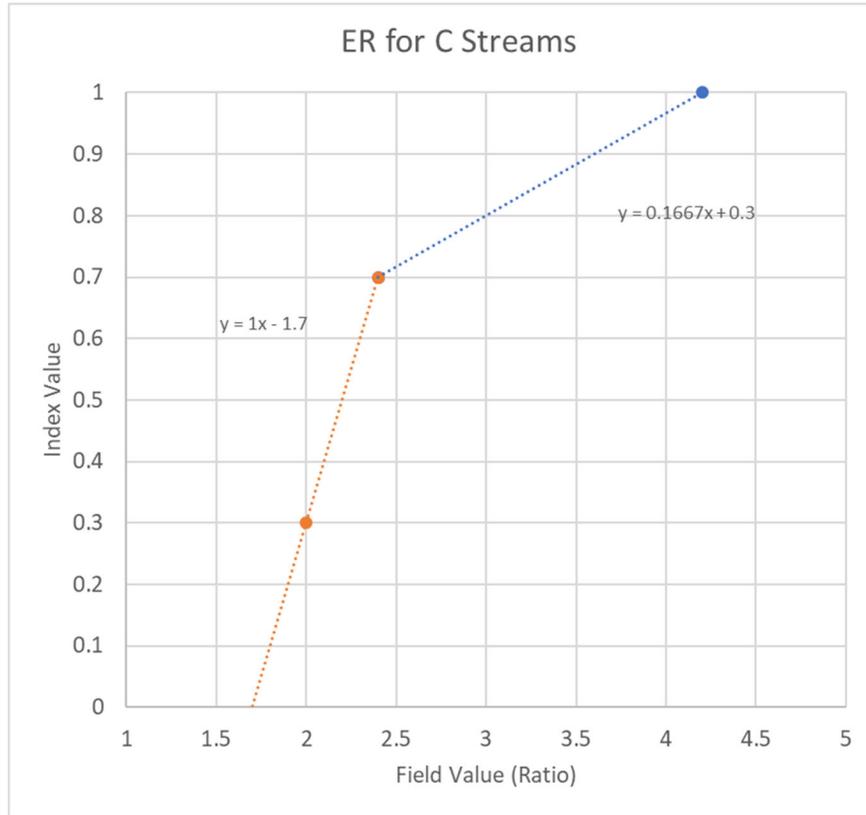


Figure 5-3a: Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves

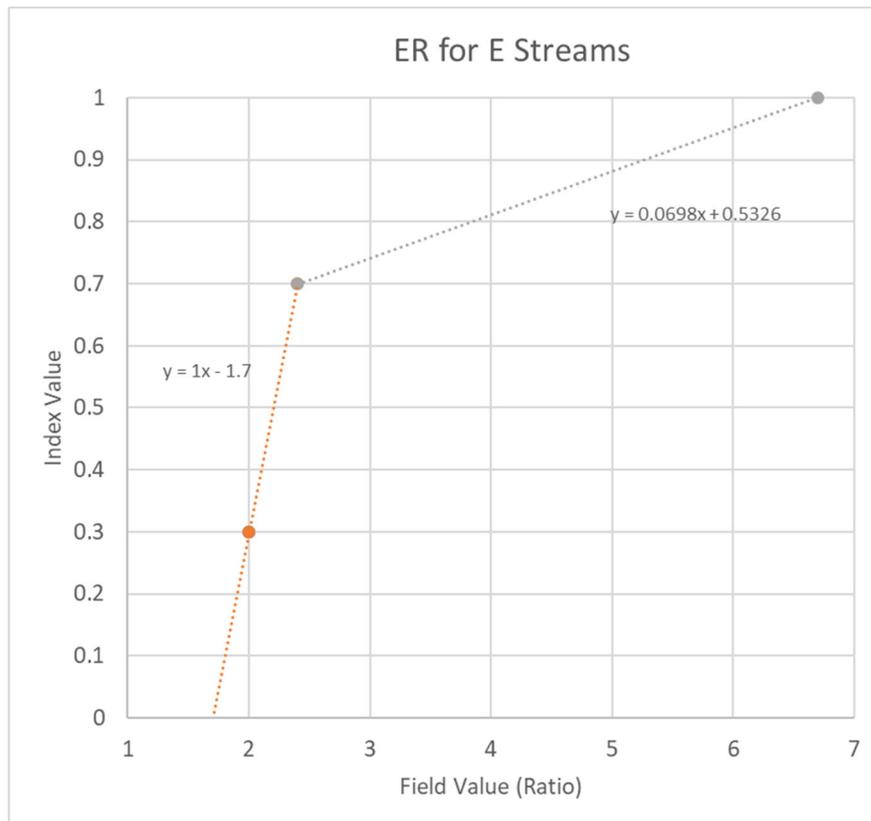


Figure 5-3b: Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves

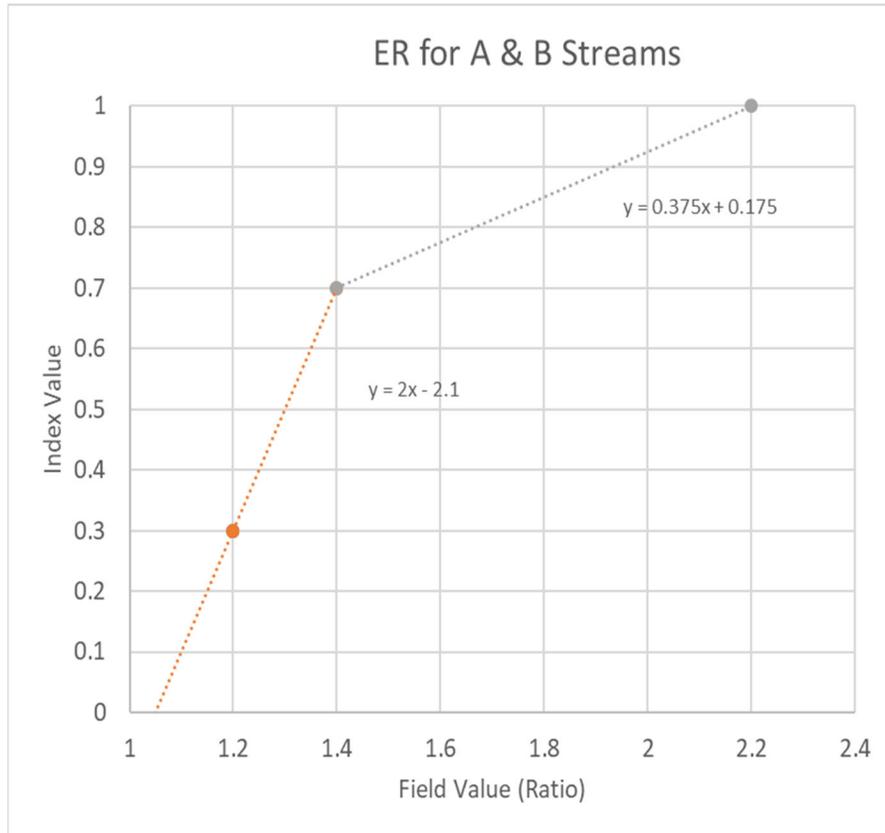


Figure 5-3c: Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves

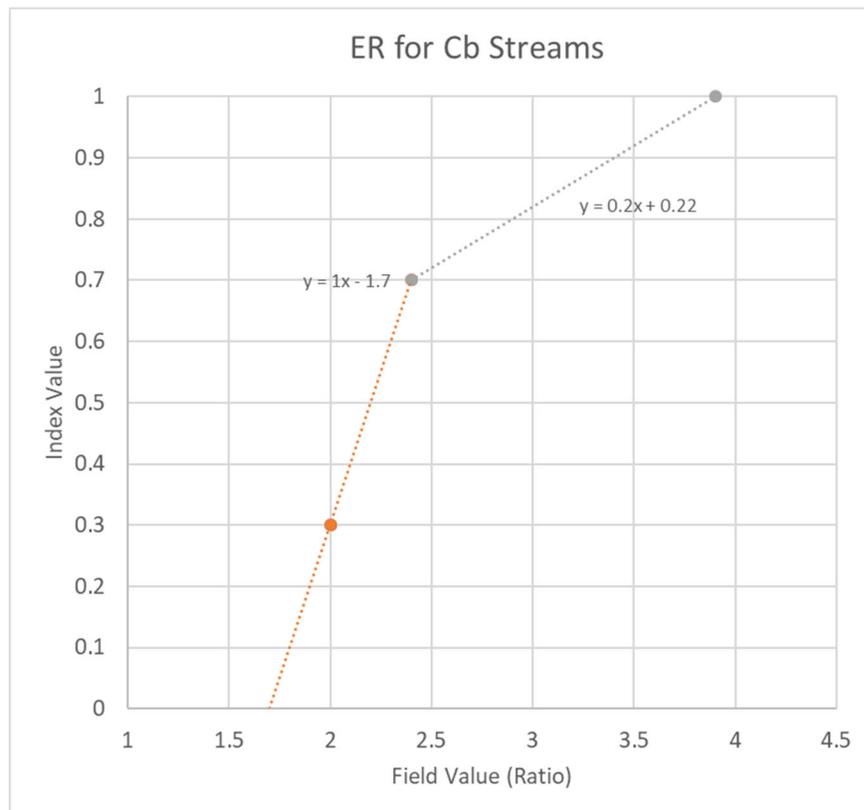


Figure 5-3d: Entrenchment Ratio Reference Curves

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the entrenchment ratio will not accurately represent entrenchment processes. Information on verifying bankfull information is provided in the User Manual.

Selection of the appropriate reference stream type is important for consistently applying this metric and determining a condition score in the tool. Guidance is provided in the User Manual to assist practitioners in identifying the reference stream type.

Reference curves were not developed for naturally occurring entrenched stream types such as F and G stream types. If the stream is a naturally occurring F stream type, e.g., located in a canyon or gorge setting, this metric is not applicable and reference curves have not been developed. Additionally, this metric is not applicable to braided (D) stream types since the width of the channels is often the same as the valley width (Rosgen 2009).

### **5.3 Percent Side Channels**

#### Summary:

Side channels can provide thermal refugia (Fernald et al. 2006; Torgersen et al. 2012), habitat refugia during high flows, and may also be used as spawning habitat if they contain the ideal depths, velocities, and substrate size for targeted species (Pitlick and Steeter 1998). They may also provide critical juvenile rearing habitat for various fish species, as well as refuge from larger predatory fish (Brown and Hartman 1987; Fausch et al. 2002; Sommer et al. 2001; Angermeier and Schlosser 1995). In general, side channels increase hydraulic and geomorphologic habitat diversity and can create conditions that support a diverse assemblage of species during different life stages.

Side channels include all open channels connected to the main channel of the project reach that carry water between baseflow and half-bankfull, even if it is only connected at one end, e.g. a slough or backwater channel. Floodplain channels that are not connected on either end to the main channel are not considered a side channel, an example being an oxbow that is filled on both ends (SFAM; Nadeau et al. 2018; Landers et al. 2002). In addition, channels that are only inundated at bankfull and higher flows are not included. While this may vary from other definitions of side channel, backwater areas provide valuable habitat.

This metric estimates the percent of the project reach length that has side channels. The metric is only applicable in alluvial valleys. Side channels were considered an important metric for inclusion in the Oregon Stream Function Assessment Method (SFAM; Nadeau et al. 2018), and their approach was used to inform this metric.

Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves in the CSQT are adapted from the reference curves in the Oregon SFAM (Table 5-7; Nadeau et al. 2018). The SFAM is similar to the SQT in that it scores metrics on a 0.0 to 1.0 scale, with scores between 0.7 and 1.0 indicating a high functioning system. Nadeau et al. (2018) compiled data from multiple studies showing that increases in the area of side channel habitat leads to increases in coho smolt production. While Colorado does not support the same fish assemblages as Oregon, members of the CSQT SC recommended the metric and reference curves be tested for use in the CSQT.

**Table 5-7: Threshold Values for Side Channels Metric from the Oregon SFAM (Nadeau et al. 2018)**

Index Value	Field Metric
1.0	100
0.7	50
0.3	10
0.0	0

While the side channels metric is not stratified in the SFAM, Nadeau et al. (2018) notes that side channels are features that are more common within alluvial valleys. Because impacts and restoration activities occur in both alluvial and colluvial valleys, the CSQT SC decided to stratify this metric by valley type where the side channel metric would only be assessed in alluvial valleys. Additionally, two curves were developed for unconfined and confined alluvial valleys. The threshold values for perennial streams in unconfined alluvial valleys were aligned with the thresholds within the SFAM shown in Table 5-9. A second set of thresholds was developed for perennial streams in confined alluvial valleys (Table 5-8). The CSQT SC used best professional judgement to determine reference standards for the confined alluvial valleys. Confined alluvial valley reference curves were based on those for alluvial valleys, but were then reduced to better represent that confined valley widths cannot support as much secondary channel length. Linear reference curves (Figure 5-4) were fit to the threshold values shown in Table 5-8.

**Table 5-8: Threshold Values for Percent Side Channels**

Index Value	Field Values by Valley Type	
	Unconfined Alluvial Valleys	Confined Alluvial Valleys
1.00	100	50
0.70	50	25
0.30	10	5
0.00	0	0

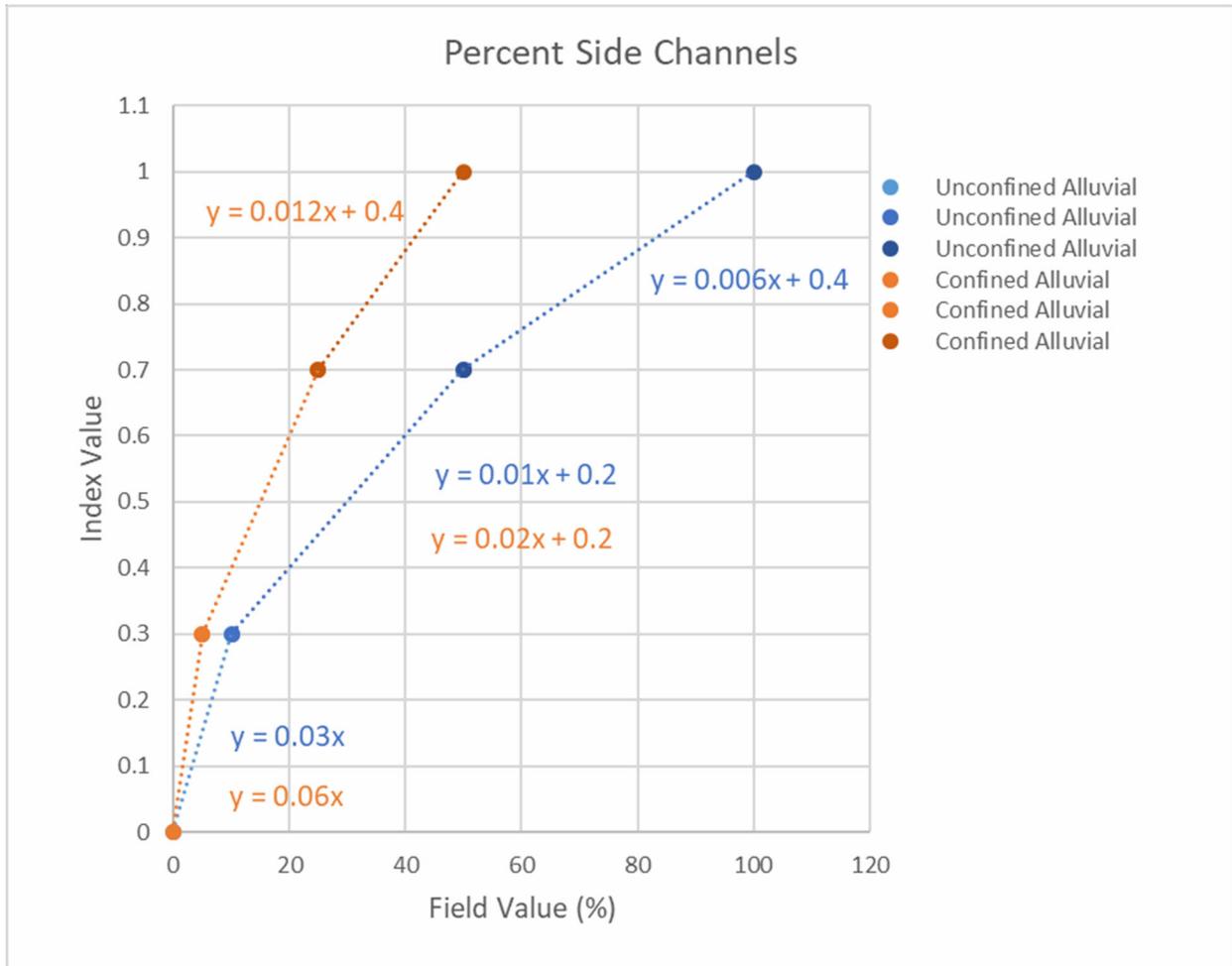


Figure 5-4: Percent Side Channels Reference Curves

Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric was developed largely based on data from the Pacific Northwest and best professional judgment. While there are studies demonstrating the benefits of side channels in Colorado (Pitlick and Steeter 1998), this metric would benefit from additional validation, review and refinement as the tool is applied. In particular, the reference curves for streams in confined alluvial valleys would benefit from testing at field sites.

This metric is also limited in that it only measures the presence of side channels and not the quality of the side channels. The hydraulic conditions within both the side channel(s) and the main channel are not characterized by this metric and it is possible that suitable habitat conditions for target species are not met merely by the presence of side channels.

## Chapter 6. Large Woody Debris Parameter

Functional Category: Geomorphology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Inputs of large wood, commonly referred to as large woody debris (LWD), provide an important structural component of many streams and floodplains. LWD can take the form of dead, fallen logs, limbs, whole trees, or groups of these components (also known as debris dams and jams) that are transported or stored in the channel, floodplain, and flood prone area (U.S. Bureau of Reclamation and U.S. ERDC 2016). LWD influences reach-scale sediment transport and hydraulic processes by: 1) creating sediment and organic matter storage areas; 2) increasing substrate diversity and habitat for benthic macroinvertebrates and cover for fish; 3) creating depth variability where large pieces span the channel and produce pools; 4) sometimes increasing local bank erosion and increasing sediment supply; and 5) providing boundary roughness and flow resistance (Wohl 2000). The LWD parameter is applicable where the upstream watershed or adjacent land area has historically supported (or has the potential to support) trees large enough to recruit LWD. Therefore, this parameter is not applicable to streams that lack forested catchments, riparian gallery forests, or otherwise naturally have a limited supply of LWD.

There are numerous metrics available to assess large woody debris. Complex methods include individual piece and jam counts within the channel and floodplain, along with characterization of wood size, type, location, and volume (Wohl et al. 2010). The Large Woody Debris Index (LWDI; Davis et al. 2001) outlined below characterizes geomorphic quality of LWD in a single index value for a 328-foot (100-meter) reach. Complex approaches like these provide information about how the presence and configuration of wood affects reach-scale functions. For example, large diameter and long pieces of wood and jams within the channel that cannot be readily mobilized, have a greater influence on in-stream functions than a small piece of wood near the top of bank that is easily mobilized. More simplified approaches, such as piece counts, are also used as rapid indicators of LWD. These approaches provide less detailed information on the composition and structure of wood in the channel but can serve as simple indicators of the influence of wood within the channel.

The two metrics from the WSQT v1.0 are also used in the CSQT v1.0: 1) the Large Woody Debris Index (LWDI) and 2) the number of pieces per 328 feet (100 meters). Either metric can be applied at a project site; however, users should not enter data for both metrics.

Metrics:

- Large Woody Debris Index (LWDI)
- Number of Pieces per 328 feet (100 meters)

## 6.1 Large Woody Debris Index (LWDI)

### Summary:

This metric is a semi-quantitative measure of the quantity and influence of large woody debris within the active channel, up to and including the top of banks, per 328 feet (100 meters) of channel length. A piece must be at least 10 cm in diameter at one end (Wohl 2000; Davis et al. 2001) and over 1 meter in length (Davis et al. 2001) to be considered LWD. The index does not include LWD beyond the top of bank on the floodplain or terrace. The index was developed by Davis et al. (2001) and evaluates LWD (pieces and debris dams) based on their ability to retain organic matter, provide fish habitat, and affect channel/substrate stability. The LWDI weights this ability for each piece or debris dam by characterizing 1) size (length and width in relation to bankfull dimensions, diameter); 2) location in relation to the active channel or during high flows; 3) type (bridge, ramp, submerged, buried); 4) structure (plain to sticky for organic matter retention); 5) stability during high flows; and 6) orientation (relative to stream bank). Higher scores indicate greater functional influence on instream processes.

The LWDI is a moderately robust measure that is not overly complex. The LWDI requires a moderate level of effort and can typically be completed in one hour or less per project reach. In order to increase consistency in applying the metric, methods for the LWDI are described in *Application of the Large Woody Debris Index: A Field User Manual* (Harman et al. 2017). Davis et al. (2001), the original methodology, should be consulted first. Harman et al. (2017) was compiled in order to answer questions that came up while applying the original methods.

### Reference Curve Development:

**Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.**

In developing the WSQT v1.0, data were collected at minimally disturbed reference standard sites primarily in the mountains of Wyoming, though a few sites were within the basin ecoregion of Wyoming. Table 6-1 shows the statistics for these data and for two additional sites, one reference site (West Plum) and one restored site (Fossil Creek), in Colorado. Data collection efforts are continuing to improve the dataset and reference curves. No stratification of this metric was included due to the small reference dataset.

**Table 6-1: Statistics for LWDI from Reference Sites.**  
All values are per 328 feet (100 meters) of stream.

Statistic	LWDI Value	
	WY	CO
Number of Sites (n)	22	2
Average	689	292
Standard Deviation	416	11
Minimum	17	284
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	433	-
Median	656	292
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	948	-
Maximum	1583	300

The following threshold values were proposed based on the WY dataset (Table 6-2):

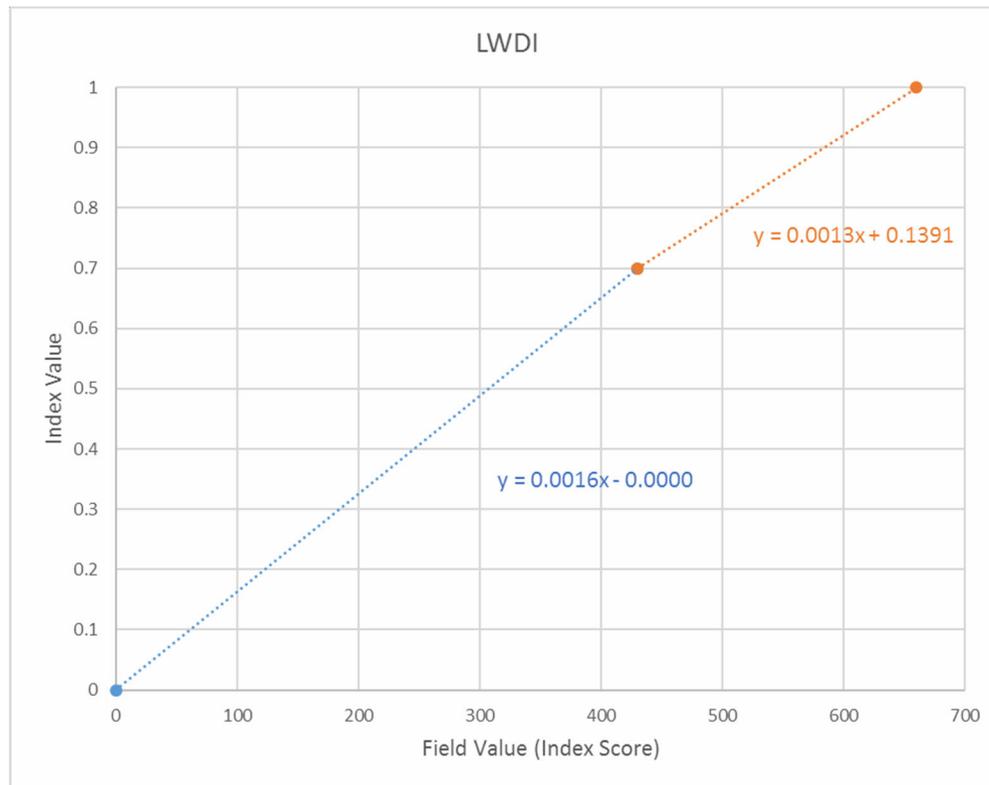
- The median of the reference dataset was used to determine the maximum index score (the median value of 656 was rounded up to 660). The median value was used instead of the 75th percentile to account for lower potential for LWD in plains and basins ecoregions. While there are sites from across the state of Wyoming in the dataset, there are more sites in the mountains where higher LWD presence is expected. Also, there are a few sites in the reference dataset that exhibit LWDI values greater than 1000, and these may have been influenced by recent fires or insect mortality.
- The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile of the reference dataset was used to inform the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk index values. The 25th percentile value of 433 was rounded to 430.
- Due to a lack of LWDI data from degraded sites, no field values were used to define a threshold between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning index values. Index values within this range are interpolated from the reference curve.

**Table 6-2: Threshold Values for the LWDI (per 328 feet or 100 meters)**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	660
0.70	430
0.00	0

These reference standards would indicate both the restored site and the reference site in CO score at the upper range of functioning-at-risk, which is consistent with the field observations of the CSQT SC. Note that while the reference site in Colorado, West Plum, had a large number of pieces, most of these pieces were relatively small in size and movable; therefore the LWD presence was not contributing as significantly to channel structure and roughness as reference sites observed in Wyoming.

A reference curve (Figure 6-1) was derived from the threshold values presented above. A broken linear curve was used to calculate index values.



**Figure 6-1: LWDI Reference Curves**

**Limitations and Data Gaps:**

The LWDI is a new metric for streams in Colorado and Wyoming and the reference curves have been developed from a relatively small dataset primarily from the mountains of Wyoming. As more data are collected, further refinement and stratification of these data and reference curves may be possible. Future stratification could consider the role of ecoregion, drainage area, valley type, forest age, canopy type, and other variables (Wohl 2011; Wohl and Beckman 2014).

This metric is not applicable to streams without forested catchments, riparian gallery forests, or other streams that naturally have a limited supply of LWD. Note that streams in scrub-shrub or willow dominated systems may have wood in the channel associated with willow jams, but the size of the pieces do not qualify as LWD. Guidance is provided in the User Manual to address these situations.

**6.2 Number of Large Wood Pieces per 328 feet (100 meters)**

**Summary:**

This metric is a count of the LWD pieces in a 100-meter section of the reach, where each piece is counted separately, including within debris dams. To be considered LWD, a piece must be at least 10 cm in diameter at one end (Wohl 2000; Davis et al. 2001) and over 1 meter in length (Davis et al. 2001). This method is a straight-forward, rapid assessment of LWD presence, and is an indicator of its overall structural influence of LWD within the stream.

Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

Reference curves were developed using the NRSA dataset, described in Section 1.8, which includes a variety of metrics associated with LWD, including the number of pieces per 100 meters. Reference curves were validated using the LWDI data described in the previous section. However, since the LWDI scores dams separately from pieces, the total number of pieces was estimated by assuming all dams only contained three pieces of LWD. Therefore, these estimated piece counts are likely lower than the actual number of pieces that would be collected using the CSQT methods.

The methods used to collect the NRSA data (i.e., number of LWD pieces in/above the wetted channel within 100m; all sizes) were similar to the LWD piece count methods for SQTs. There is one notable distinction between the two data collection methods: the NRSA method is an average number of pieces per 100 meters of stream, whereas the CSQT procedure collects data on the 100-meter segment within the reach that would yield the highest value. Therefore, the piece counts from NRSA are likely lower than the number of pieces that would be collected with the SQT methods.

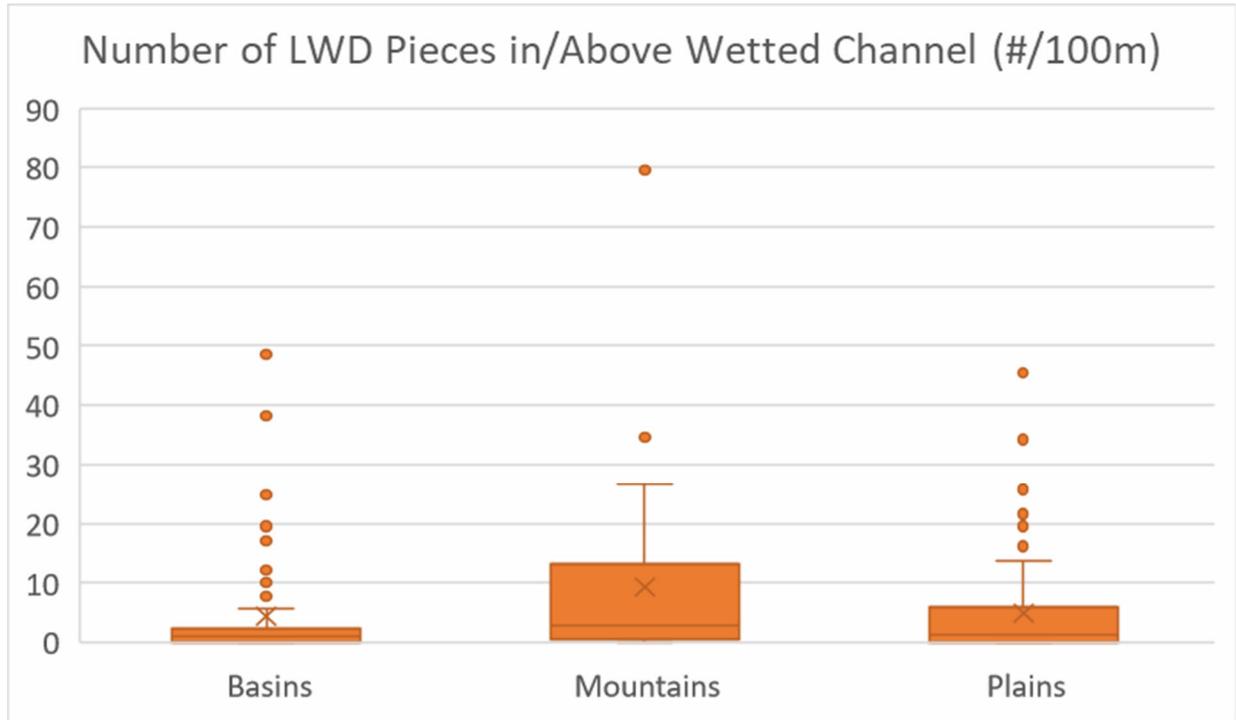
An effort was made to identify reference standard sites within the NRSA dataset using legacy tree size, riparian vegetation condition, absent canopy, and other attributes available within the NRSA dataset. However, a multivariate analysis was beyond the scope of this study and no single attribute was found suitable to describe reference standards for LWD. As such, the NRSA dataset for this metric includes all reference aquatic resources, including reference standard and degraded sites. Future data analyses and collection efforts will continue to improve the dataset and reference curves.

Stratification of the data by region was explored using the NRSA dataset. Stratification by bankfull width and dominant canopy type (coniferous, deciduous, mixed, or evergreen) were also considered. However, many of the NRSA sites listed the dominant canopy as absent, indicating that there was no canopy at the site. Bankfull width was considered as a surrogate for stream size or drainage area, but no meaningful trend was identified using bankfull width as an independent variable. The dataset was not large enough to stratify by both ecoregion and bankfull width and produce meaningful results. Therefore, the WSTT analyzed data by ecoregion since the ecoregion may represent differences in the riparian community and LWD source material.

The statistics for the NRSA LWD dataset are provided in Table 6-3 and Figure 6-2. Note that the NRSA dataset includes both reference standard and degraded sites, and the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile and median values for all three ecoregions are low. The average and 75<sup>th</sup> percentile values indicate that streams in the mountains tend to have the most wood and streams in the basins tend to have the lowest amount of wood. While these differences could be used to produce separate reference curves for the ecoregions, there are multiple sites in both the plains and basins that exhibited large amounts of LWD, as seen in the 95<sup>th</sup> percentile values in Table 6-3. Some sites within the basins and plains ecoregions may occur in forested areas that provide significant source material, and we were not able to differentiate these sites in the dataset. Thus, a single reference curve was applied to all ecoregions at sites occurring within naturally forested watersheds or riparian gallery forests.

**Table 6-3: Statistics for Number of LWD Pieces from the NRSA Dataset**

Statistic	Number of LWD pieces/100m by Ecoregion			Number of LWD pieces/100m All NRSA Data	LWDI Estimated Piece Counts
	Basins	Mountains	Plains		
Number of Sites (n)	64	38	68	170	22
Average	4	9	5	6	30
Standard Deviation	9	15	8	11	19
Minimum	0	0	0	0	1
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	0	0	0	0	23
Median	1	3	1	1	28
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	2	13	6	7	45
95 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	24	28	21	26	57
Maximum	49	80	45	80	74



**Figure 6-2: Box Plots for Number of LWD Pieces from the NRSA Dataset**

Based on the assumption that the LWD parameter would not be applicable for many sites within the basins and plains, the reference curve was developed using the data from the mountains ecoregion. The following threshold values were used to inform the curve (Table 6-4 and Figure 6-3):

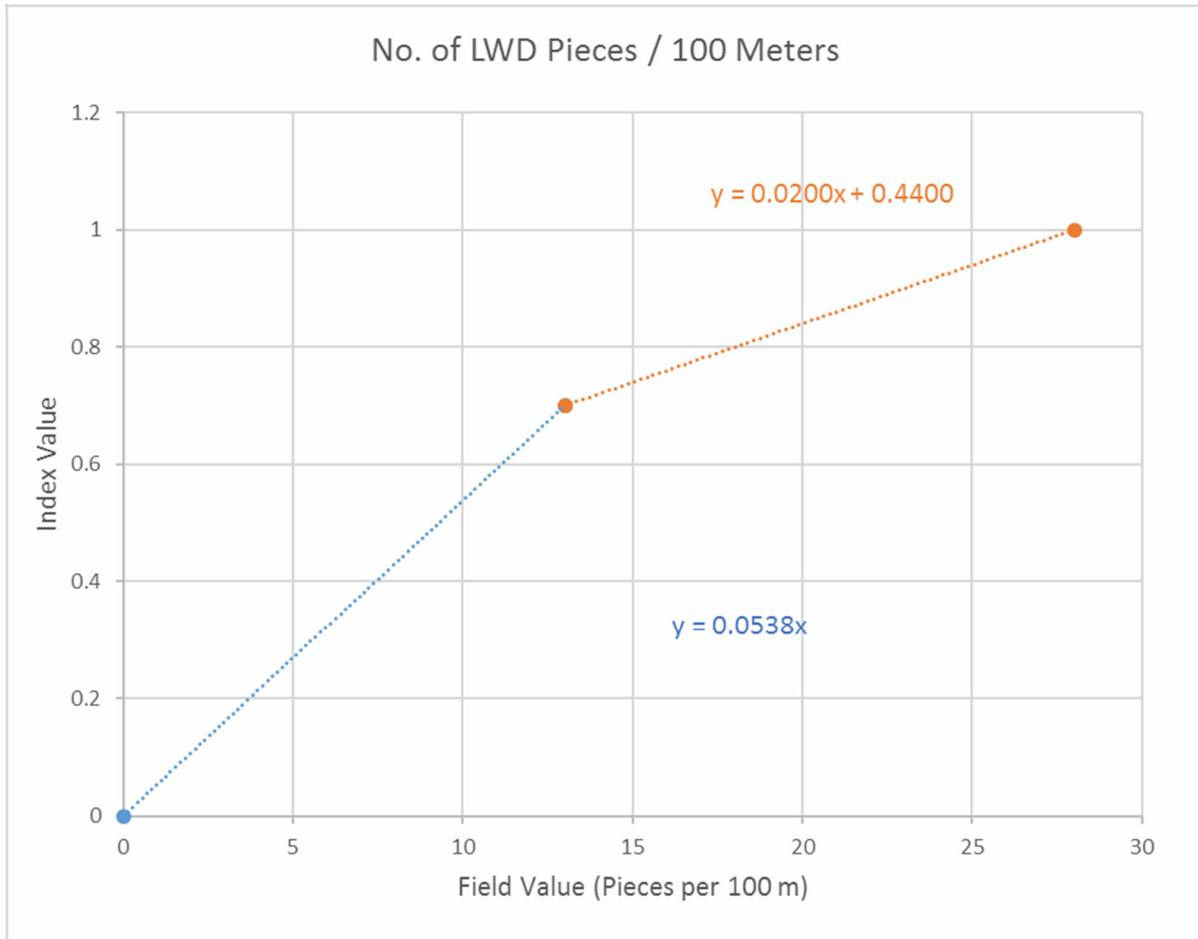
- The 95<sup>th</sup> percentile from the NRSA sites within the mountains matched the median value from the LWDI estimated piece count. The median value from the latter dataset was used to define the maximum index score for the LWDI metric. The 95<sup>th</sup> percentile from the mountains was used to define the maximum index score for this metric.
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile from the NRSA sites within the mountains was used to define the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile from the LWDI dataset was used to define the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk for the LWDI metric, but because the NRSA dataset contains non-reference standard sites and the LWDI dataset does not, it did not make sense to similarly rely on the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile.

A broken linear curve was fit to the threshold values (Figure 6-3). The shape of the curve follows a conceptual understanding of LWD function and restoration incentives. More lift can be provided in systems characterized as not-functioning or functioning-at-risk, represented by the steeper slope on the index curve for that range of scoring, while adding more wood to a system with a functioning amount of wood already would yield less lift.

**Table 6-4: Threshold Values for the Number of LWD Pieces per 100 meters**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	28
0.70	13
0.00	0

Data from three reference quality sites within Colorado were scored to test this metric. The three reference quality sites had 13, 15, and 57 pieces of wood per 100m, which all score in the functioning range of index values.



**Figure 6-3: Number of LWD Pieces Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric is not applicable to streams without forested catchments, riparian gallery forests, or other streams that naturally have a limited supply of LWD. Note that streams in scrub-shrub or willow dominated systems may have wood in the channel associated with willow jams, but the size of the pieces does not qualify as LWD. Guidance is provided in the User Manual to address these situations using the LWDI, but not for the piece count metric. In these instances, it may be beneficial to use the LWDI instead of this metric.

As more data are collected, further refinement and stratification of these data and development of multiple reference curves may be possible. Future stratification could consider the within-ecoregion differences associated with drainage area, forest age, valley type, canopy type, and other variables.

## Chapter 7. Lateral Migration Parameter

Functional Category: Geomorphology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Lateral migration is the movement of a stream across its floodplain and is largely driven by processes influencing bank erosion and deposition. Natural processes of lateral migration vary by stream; some systems maintain dynamic equilibrium while moving across the landscape. A channel in dynamic equilibrium maintains its cross-sectional area while moving across the landscape; that is, lateral erosion and deposition are approximately equal. Systems naturally in disequilibrium, like some braided streams, ephemeral channels, and alluvial fans may naturally experience higher rates of bank erosion as they alternate between aggrading, incising or avulsing states due to natural patterns in sediment and hydrologic processes (Roni and Beechie 2013).

This parameter is included in the Geomorphology functional category because it provides information about sediment supply/transport and dynamic equilibrium processes. Lateral migration rates vary naturally by stream type and can be affected by changes in sediment processes at the watershed and reach scale (Roni and Beechie 2013). Lateral stability is one of the parameters described in Harman et al. (2012). Readers should refer to Harman et al. (2012) for additional discussion of bank migration and lateral stability processes, and stream types that are susceptible to lateral migration versus those where migration is naturally constrained.

There are multiple approaches that can be used to measure or estimate lateral migration processes and condition, some of which are summarized in Harman et al. (2012). Some of these approaches include:

- Aerial imagery interpretation of bank retreat, measurements of belt width divided by bankfull width (meander width ratio), and visual assessment of bank cover and stability by photointerpretation of land use and cover types (Rosgen 1996; NRCS 2007).
- Semi-quantitative measures of bank cover and stability measured over the entire reach length (BLM 2017; WDEQ 2018; Binns 1982).
- The Bank Erosion Hazard Index/Near Bank Stress approach (BEHI/NBS; Rosgen 2014).
- Measurements of bank erosion using surveyed cross sections, bank profiles, or bank pins (Rosgen 2014).
- A modeling program, such as BSTEM (Bank Stability and Toe Erosion Model), which is an intensive approach if data are not available for model calibration, and a moderately intensive approach if data are available (Simon et al. 2009).
- Greenline Stability Rating, which characterizes the live perennial vascular plants and other natural stabilizing elements on or near the water's edge and provides a rating of bank stability for a subsampled section of the reach (Winward 2000).
- Measures of the extent of bank erosion and/or armoring within a reach (NRCS 2007).

The four metrics from the WSQT v1.0 lateral migration parameter are also used in the CSQT: the Greenline Stability Rating, dominant BEHI/NBS, percent eroding streambank, and percent armoring. The dominant BEHI/NBS and percent eroding streambank metrics rely on BEHI/NBS

assessment and are intended to be used together in single-thread channels. The dominant BEHI/NBS metric characterizes the magnitude of erosion, and the percent eroding streambank characterizes the extent of the problem. The Greenline Stability Rating metric can be collected alone or in conjunction with other lateral migration metrics and is of similar rigor. For systems with naturally high rates of bank erosion, the Greenline Stability Rating is a better metric than dominant BEHI/NBS and percent eroding streambank. The percent armoring metric should be used in stream reaches where rip rap or other hardened bank stabilization treatments are present or proposed.

The four metrics in this parameter are measures of channel condition that serve as indicators of altered processes, but do not characterize lateral migration rates or sediment processes themselves.

Metrics:

- Greenline Stability Rating
- Dominant BEHI/NBS
- Percent Streambank Erosion (%)
- Percent Armoring (%)

### **7.1 Greenline Stability Rating**

Summary:

There is a strong interrelationship between bank stability and the amount and kind of riparian vegetation growing on the streambanks. Late successional plant communities are indicators of resilience, stability, and reference condition (Youngblood et al. 1985; Winward 2000; MacFarlane et al. 2017). Evaluation of the types of riparian vegetation provides a good indication of a streambank vegetation's ability to buffer the hydrologic forces of moving water (Winward 2000).

The Greenline Stability Rating (GSR) is collected along the "greenline", which is a linear grouping of live perennial vascular plants on or near the water's edge (Winward 2000). The primary purpose of the GSR is to provide an index rating of the natural capacity of vegetation to protect streambanks against erosion (Winward, 2000). The metric also characterizes anchored rocks or logs (large woody debris or materials, see also Chapter 6) large enough to withstand the forces of water encountered on the greenline edge as a natural, stable percentage of the greenline in place of the vegetation.

The GSR is calculated by multiplying the percent composition (by length) of specified community types along the greenline by the stability class rating assigned to that type, then calculating the average value for the sample reach. The CSQT allows for two methods to measure GSR: 1) the original data collection procedures described in Winward (2000), or 2) the Modified Winward Greenline Stability Rating procedures described in USDOl (2011). The latter integrates a more systematic approach to collecting data by using plots instead of paces and calculating stability ratings by key species rather than community types to improve precision, and includes additional species stability ratings not identified in Winward (2000).

---

Reference Curve Development:

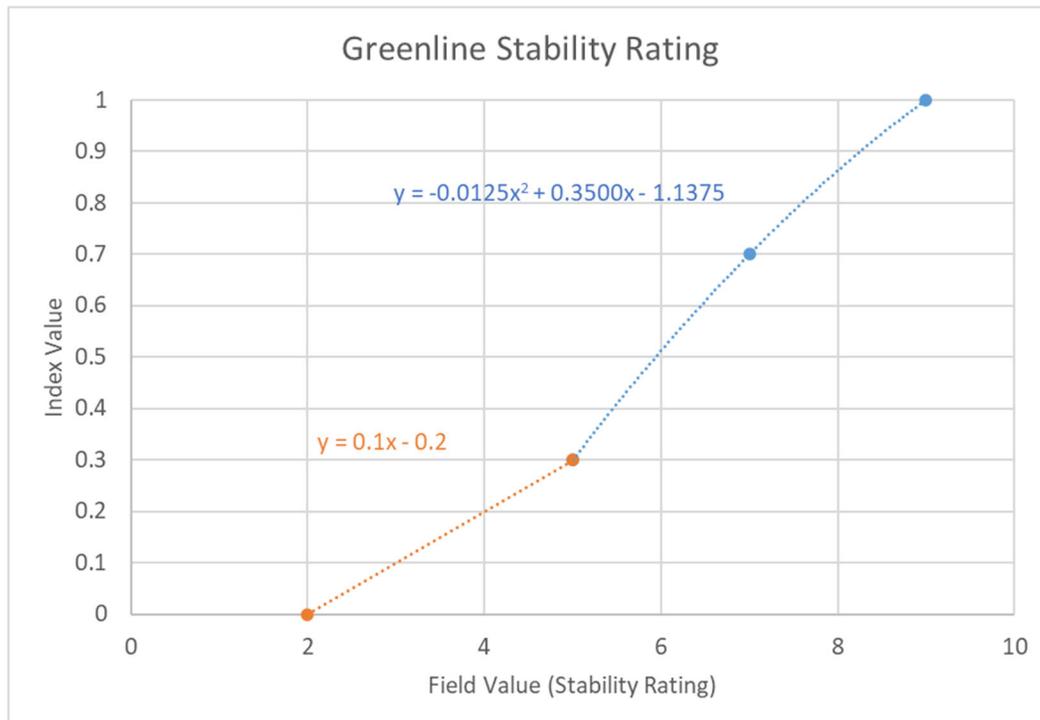
**Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.**

The threshold values and reference curve were constructed on the index rating classes established by Winward (2000) as shown in Table 7-1.

**Table 7-1: Greenline Stability Rating and Functional Capacity**

GSR	Stability Description	Functional Capacity
9-10	Excellent	Functioning
7-8	High	
5-6	Mid	Functioning-At-Risk
3-4	Low	Not-Functioning
1-2	Very Low	

The threshold value between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk was set at 5 (between low and mid) and the threshold between functioning-at-risk and functioning was set at 7 (the lowest GSR in the high stability category) as shown in Table 7-1. A narrow range of the mid rating class is representing functioning-at-risk on the reference curve. A linear relationship was fit to the not functioning range of scoring and a polynomial equation was fit to the functioning-at-risk and functioning threshold values (Figure 7-1).



**Figure 7-1: Greenline Stability Rating Reference Curve**

In August 2016, the Wyoming Stream Technical Team (WSTT) team visited several sites that were considered to represent minimally disturbed reference standard sites (Table 7-2). However, because they are located on public lands, they have likely been subject to some historical use, including grazing and/or timber removal. In evaluating the datasets and proposed benchmarks, the WSTT team concluded it was reasonable to characterize these sites as functioning or (high) functioning-at-risk. These sites have the potential to support aquatic ecosystem structure and function and were not in a clearly degraded state.

**Table 7-2: Greenline Stability Rating at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT**

Site	Ecoregion	GSR
Wood River, above Middle Fork	Mountains	6.1
Middle Fork Wood River	Mountains	6.9
Middle Fork Wood River - Upstream	Mountains	7.4
Jack Creek	Mountains	8.0

Limitations and Data Gaps:

As described above, two methods may be employed to produce the GSR. The same methodology must be used for pre- and post-condition/project use. The original Greenline publication only includes stability class information for riparian (plant) community types of the Intermountain/Rocky Mountain Region (Youngblood et al. 1985), while USDOJ (2011) has notably expanded the list of bank stability ratings for other species and community types in the western United States. The Multiple Indicator Monitoring Technical Reference (Table H1. on p. 136 of USDOJ, 2011) also outlines procedures for developing a relative stability value based on general rooting characteristics, either as assigned by the authors or with reference to the literature.

The number of feet of anchored rocks or logs, large enough to withstand the forces of water, encountered along the greenline edge are counted as a natural, stable percentage of the greenline in place of the vegetation. A potential limitation of this method is differentiation between natural stabilizing elements and unnatural armoring such as exposed riprap that can artificially elevate the stability rating. Armoring treatments in many systems can be considered an adverse impact or form of functional loss. In these cases, use of this metric should be applied in conjunction with the percent armoring metric.

The GSR is less valuable in steeper (greater than 4 percent gradient) streams because the large, anchored rocks are less likely to be affected by management and/or restoration activities (Winward 2000). Additionally, for large rivers where hydrology is largely regulated by landform features (i.e. geology) instead of vegetation, the GSR may also be less valuable (Winward 2000).

**7.2 Dominant BEHI/NBS**

Summary:

The Bank Erosion Hazard Index (BEHI) and Near Bank Stress (NBS) are two bank erosion estimation tools from the Bank Assessment for Non-point source Consequences of Sediment (BANCS) model (Rosgen 2006). BEHI and NBS ratings are determined based on collecting field

measurements and visual observations. The BEHI portion of the streambank assessment includes the evaluation of streambank height, depth and density of roots, vegetation cover, and bank angle (Rosgen 1996, 2006). From the streambank assessment, a categorical BEHI risk rating is assigned, from very low to extreme. Methods with differing levels of rigor can be employed to measure NBS (Rosgen 2006). All methods determine channel flow characteristics, such as water-surface slope and direction of velocity vectors, to assign an NBS risk rating, which also ranges from very low to extreme.

The dominant BEHI/NBS is the rating that occurs most frequently for the reach. Thus, dominant BEHI/NBS is the mode rating for the reach. For example, a dominant BEHI/NBS rating of High/High means that most of the assessed length, e.g., outside meander bends, has this rating. Instructions on how to measure the dominant BEHI/NBS rating is provided in the User Manual.

Regionalization efforts for the BANCS model have met with mixed results when BEHI/NBS ratings have been used to predict erosion rates (McMillan et al. 2017). However, using the dominant BEHI/NBS rating to characterize the severity of the relative risk of bank erosion, *rather than* trying to predict a quantitative erosion rate, places the focus on the potential for accelerated bank erosion due to geotechnical and hydraulic forces. BEHI/NBS is included in the CSQT for the following reasons:

1. It is rapid to moderate in terms of time required to collect data depending on the way it is implemented. Rosgen (2014) outlines several data collection approaches to measure BEHI and NBS depending on study objectives and site conditions.
2. By integrating two ratings, the method assesses both geotechnical (BEHI) and hydraulic (NBS) forces, which is unique among rapid methods. This is important because vertical banks devoid of vegetation may visually appear to be eroding, but if the hydraulic forces acting against the bank are very low, and bank materials are cohesive and non-stratified, there may be little to no bank erosion potential.
3. It is a common method used by practitioners of natural channel design, which is a common approach used in compensatory stream mitigation programs (ELI et al. 2016).

Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.***

Initial development and testing of the BEHI and NBS methods incorporated field data collected in Colorado and Wyoming, as described in Rosgen (1996). Each combination of BEHI and NBS rating is assigned to one of four stability categories (Table 7-3; Rosgen 2008). These stability categories were assigned to a functional capacity category as follows: stable represents functioning, moderately unstable represents functioning-at-risk, and unstable and highly unstable represent not-functioning.

**Table 7-3: Dominant BEHI/NBS stability ratings provided in Rosgen (2008). (VL) is very low; (L) is low; (M) is moderate; (H) is high; (VH) is very high; (Ex) is extreme.**

CSQT functional capacity	Functioning	Functioning-at-Risk		Non-Functioning
Rosgen (2008) stability rating	Stable	Moderately Unstable	Unstable	Highly Unstable
BEHI/NBS combinations	L/VL, L/L, L/M, L/H, L/VH, M/VL	M/L, M/M, M/H, L/Ex, H/VL, H/L*	M/VH, M/Ex, H/M, H/H*, VH/VL, Ex/VL, Ex/L	H/Ex, Ex/M, Ex/H, Ex/VH, VH/VH, Ex/Ex
* Ratings were included in two categories. The erosion rate curves based on data from Colorado were consulted to remove duplicate values from the table. Additionally, not all possible BEHI/NBS combinations are included in the source reference and have been left out of this table.				

Because the metric relies on categorical data, reference curves were not developed. Instead, as noted above, the ratings and categories from Table 7-3 were assigned to a functional capacity category, with specific index values assigned based on relating the stability ratings to functional capacity as described below in lieu of a reference curve (and shown in Table 7-4).

- The ratings within the stable category were considered to represent a functioning condition (1.00). Stable in this context indicates that functioning streams migrate laterally at appropriate rates and maintain their cross-sectional area and sustain functioning riparian vegetation while their position on the landscape may change.
- The ratings within the moderately unstable category were considered to represent a functioning-at-risk range of conditions (0.30-0.69).
- The ratings within the Unstable and Highly Unstable categories were considered to represent a not-functioning condition (0.00-0.29).
- Within these index ranges, the ratings were assigned an index value based on the severity of the instability, with more unstable ratings receiving lower scores.

**Table 7-4: Index Values for Dominant BEHI/NBS**

Index Value	Field Value
0.00	H/VH, H/Ex, VH/VH, VH/Ex, Ex/M, Ex/H, Ex/VH, Ex/Ex
0.10	M/Ex,
0.20	M/VH, H/M, H/H, VH/M, VH/H
0.30	M/H, Ex/L, Ex/VL
0.40	H/L, VH/L
0.50	H/VL, VH/VL, M/M
0.60	L/Ex, M/L
1.00	L/VL, L/L, L/M, L/H, L/VH, M/VL

**Limitations and Data Gaps:**

This metric is applicable to single-thread channels where the reference condition is a stable channel. For systems with naturally high rates of bank erosion, this metric should not be assessed.

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the BEHI will not accurately represent erosion processes. Information on verifying bankfull stage is provided in the User Manual.

**7.3 Percent Streambank Erosion**

**Summary:**

This metric estimates the percent of the streambank within a reach that is actively eroding, according to BEHI/NBS ratings. The percent eroding streambank metric provides a measure of the extent of bank erosion, whereas the dominant BEHI/NBS rating provides the magnitude of active bank erosion. The BEHI/NBS ratings that represent non-eroding and actively eroding banks are listed in Table 7-5. The field value is calculated by adding the length of BEHI/NBS ratings that represent actively eroding banks from the left and right banks and dividing it by the total bank length in the assessment sub-reach (e.g., reach length times two) and multiplying by 100 percent. Note that riffle sections that are not eroding and depositional areas like point bars are not evaluated in the BEHI/NBS assessment, but these sections are included when calculating the total bank length (denominator) for this metric. The assumption is that those banks would rate similarly to the non-erodible bank category, and eroding banks that represent an ongoing level of impairment will be represented by the ratings in the actively eroding banks category.

This metric does not distinguish between sections of bank that are naturally stable from those that are anthropogenically hardened or armored. In many systems armoring treatments can be considered an adverse impact or form of functional loss. Where armoring is present, use of this metric should be applied in conjunction with the percent armoring metric.

*Table 7-5: BEHI/NBS stability ratings that represent actively eroding and non-eroding banks*

<b>Non-eroding Banks</b>	<b>Actively Eroding Banks</b>
L/VL, L/L, L/M, L/H, L/VH, L/Ex, M/VL, M/L	M/M, M/H, M/VH, M/Ex, H/VL, H/L, H/M, H/H, H/VH, H/Ex, VH/VL, VH/L, VH/M, VH/H, VH/VH, VH/Ex Ex/VL, Ex/L Ex/M, Ex/H, Ex/VH, Ex/Ex

Reference Curve Development:

**Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.**

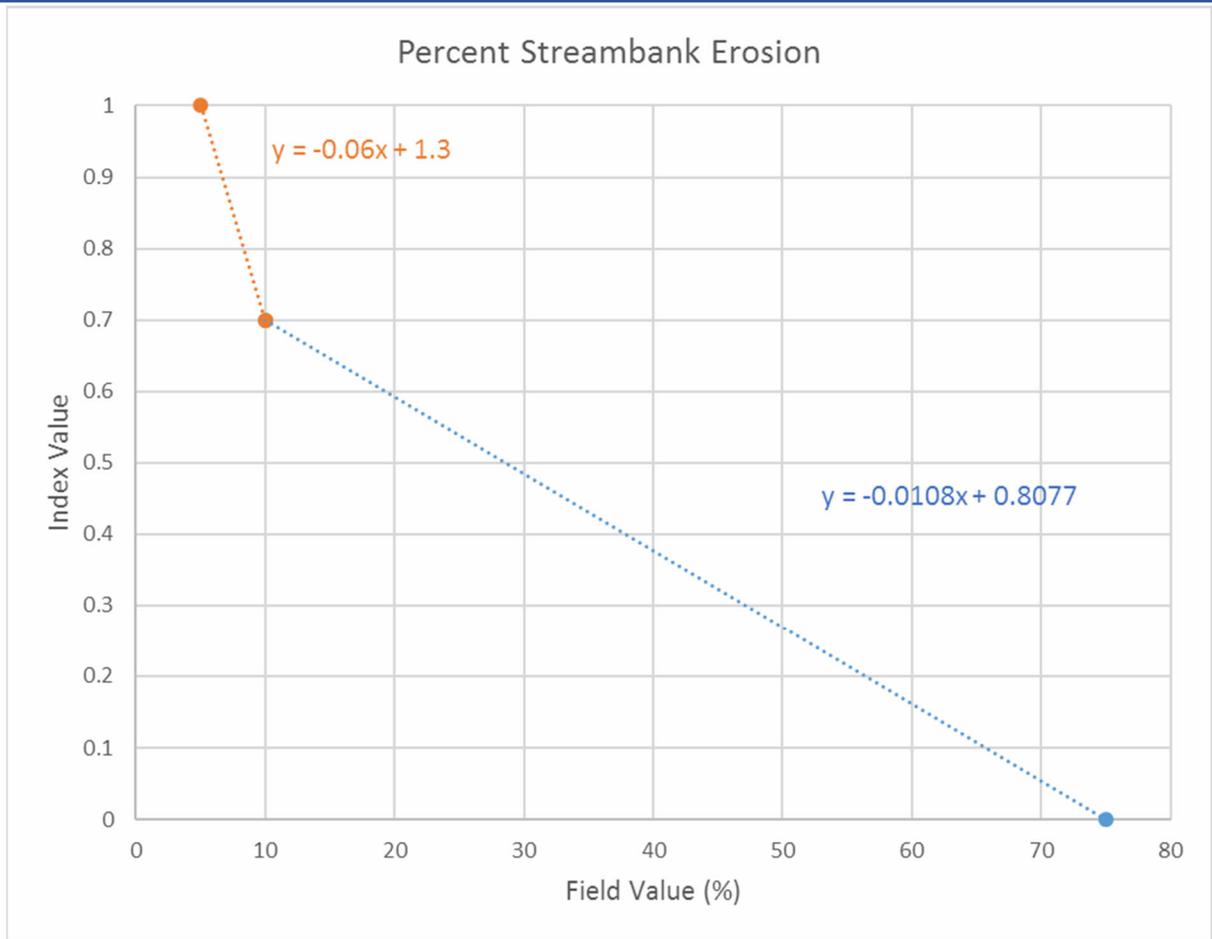
The Habitat Quality Index for trout streams (Binns 1982) contains a metric that scores the length of eroding bank according to the following criteria:

- 100% to 75% eroding banks are inadequate to support trout,
- 74% to 50% provide very limited potential,
- 49% to 25% provide limited potential,
- 24% to 10% provide moderate potential to support trout, and
- 9% to 0% eroding banks are completely adequate to support trout

Based on these criteria, a minimum index value of 0.00 was assigned where percent streambank erosion exceeded 75% of bank length. Members of the WSTT that have applied the HQI methods across Wyoming have rarely observed values greater than 10% eroding streambanks among reference standard streams, and thus concluded this to be a reasonable threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk index scores. The thresholds identified in Table 7-6 were used to develop reference curves (Figure 7-2). It was not possible to fit a single equation to the threshold values, so a broken linear curve was used to differentiate between the functioning range of index values and the not-functioning and functioning-at-risk range. The threshold between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk is interpolated rather than assigned a specific value.

*Table 7-6: Threshold Values for Percent Streambank Erosion*

Index Value	Field Value (%)
1.00	≤ 5
0.70	10
0.00	≥ 75



**Figure 7-2: Percent Streambank Erosion Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

This metric is applicable to single-thread channels where the reference condition is a stable channel. For systems with naturally high rates of bank erosion, this metric should not be assessed.

## **7.4 Percent Armoring**

### Summary:

Bank armoring is a common technique to stabilize banks and/or prevent lateral migration, and involves the establishment of hard structures (e.g., rip rap, gabion baskets, concrete and other engineered materials that prevent lateral migration processes) along the bank edge. Literature shows that bank armoring can have both positive and negative effects on aquatic functions (Reid and Church 2015; Fischenich 2003; Henderson 1986). Beneficial effects of armoring may include the creation of localized fish habitat (scour pool and cover formation) and a reduction in excessive bank erosion and sediment supply (Reid and Church 2015; Fischenich 2003; Henderson 1986). In Colorado, CPW has documented little beneficial effects of armoring on native species habitat except for the native Front Range transition species of stonecat (*noturus flavus*). Conversely, unfavorable effects include loss of fish habitat, sediment and wood input, and biological diversity, and impacts to floodplain development and channel evolution through prevention of natural lateral migration rates (Fischenich 2003; Henderson 1986). Bank armoring can also lead to accelerated bank erosion and changes in sediment dynamics in adjacent, non-armored reaches. Studies documenting the effects of reach-scale streambank armoring on geomorphology, biology, and the ecosystem at large are preliminary and call for more research (Reid and Church 2015; Stein et al. 2013).

Recognizing the adverse consequences of armoring treatments in streams, the CSQT includes a basic bank armoring metric in the lateral migration parameter. In many systems armoring treatments can be considered an adverse impact or form of functional loss despite the few exceptions, and the other metrics included to describe this parameter do not adequately capture the functional loss associated with hard armoring practices. The armoring metric should only be used if armoring techniques are present or proposed in the project reach. To calculate the armoring field value, measure the total length of armored banks (left and right) and divide by the total bank length (e.g., project reach length times two). Multiply by 100 to report the percentage of bank length that is armored.

### Reference Curve Development:

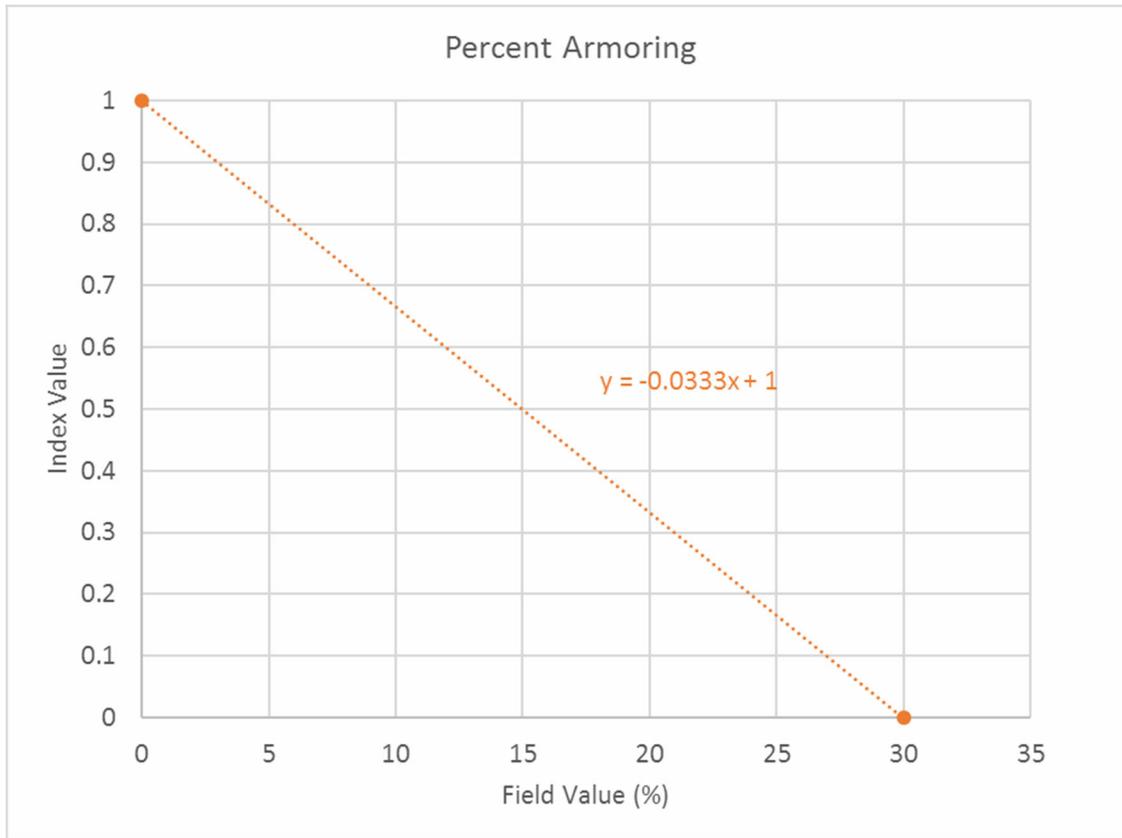
***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

While most research has shown a negative relationship between armoring and functional impairment in streams, there were no studies found during development of this tool that explicitly evaluated the relationship between the extent of armoring to functional impairment by stream length. Because hard armoring would be absent in reference standard sites, a field value of 0% was assigned an index value of 1.00. Thirty percent (30%) armored was assigned an index score of 0.00 and a linear curve was established between the two points (Figure 7-3). Setting the minimum index value at 30% armored stream length seemed reasonable, as it means that almost a third of the project reach is armored on both sides of the channel. At this level of armoring, the reach could be considered channelized and functional loss of channel migration processes could be severe. Threshold values from the WSQT v1.0 are shown in Table 7-7.

The CSQT SC decided to incorporate an override in the parameter score based on a high percent armoring field value. If more than 50% of the reach is armored, the metric and parameter will score a 0.00 and the other lateral migration metrics do not need to be measured. At this magnitude, the armoring is so pervasive that lateral migration processes would likely have no functional value.

**Table 7-7: Threshold Values for Percent Armoring**

Index Value	Field Value (%)
1.00	0
0.00	30



**Figure 7-3: Percent Armoring Reference Curve**

**Limitations and Data Gaps:**

Although a majority of literature and available studies documents a negative relationship between bank armoring and multiple stream functions, no information could be found relating the extent of armored stream banks to functional loss. Therefore, the reference curves are based solely on best professional judgement. The reference curves for this metric will benefit from validation and testing.

## Chapter 8. Bed Material Characterization Parameter

Functional Category: Geomorphology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

The ecological effects of fine-sediment accumulation are ubiquitous and wide-ranging (Wood and Armitage 1997). The size and stability of bed material has been linked to macroinvertebrate abundance and diversity (Hussain and Pandit 2012). Additionally, multiple fish species build spawning beds out of gravel and fine sediment accumulation can reduce the quality of spawning habitats and egg survival (summarized in Wood and Armitage 1997). Characterizing bed material provides insight into sediment transport processes (Bunte and Abt 2001) and whether these processes are functioning in a way that supports suitable habitat for a functioning ecological community (Allan 1995).

There are many ways that sediment transport can be directly measured and modeled, however, many of these approaches are time and data intensive (Harman et al. 2012). Monitoring the ecosystem responses to reach-scale impacts or restoration efforts necessitate a simpler indicator. Evaluating the bed material can provide insight into whether sediment transport processes are functioning to transport and distribute sediments in a way that can support the stream ecosystem.

The CSQT Beta Version included one metric to evaluate this parameter, the Size Class Pebble Count Analyzer. This metric was developed by the Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station to assess cumulative watershed effects of land management practices on changes to grain size distributions (Bevenger and King 1995). The method relies on identification of a reference site and requires pebble counts at both the project site and reference site. The spreadsheet compares the percent of fines in both pebble count datasets and determines the likelihood the samples are from the same population. **This metric was removed in the CSQT v1.0 due to faulted scoring methodology that equated a stronger statistical significance (measured using the p-value) with the magnitude of the difference between samples.** This chapter was maintained in this document since the CSQT SC is considering options to put this parameter back into future versions of the CSQT.

Options considered and under consideration are listed below.

- CDPHE Policy 98-1 *Guidance for Implementation of Colorado's Narrative Sediment Standard* outlines two metrics to assess macroinvertebrate protection and determine impacts to aquatic life uses: percent fines < 2mm and the Sediment Tolerance Indicator Values (TIV<sub>SED</sub>). There is one metric to assess salmonid spawning habitat: percent of spawning area covered by particles smaller than 8mm. Use attainment thresholds are provided in the policy and are stratified by sediment region. Thresholds and sediment regions do not cover the entire state and data may be lacking in areas where restoration and impacts are likely to occur.
- An embeddedness metric was considered for this parameter but existing metrics (e.g. Rosgen 2014 and USEPA 2016) are qualitative.
- The Riffle Stability Index (Kappesser 2002) has been used in Rosgen B3 and F3b stream types, which have slopes ranging between 2 and 4% to show if upstream sediment supply is depositing on riffles. Results are placed into three bins that closely

relate to functioning, functioning-at-risk, and not-functioning. However, this method is only applicable to B3 and F3b stream types, and most mitigation/restoration activities occur in C4 and B4c stream types.

- There are many other methods for developing grain-size distributions and performing associated calculations (Bunte and Abt 2001). Laub et al (2012) provides several metrics that use grain size distributions to assist in determining bed complexity. These metrics include calculations for heterogeneity, sorting, Fredle index, a gradation coefficient, and a sediment coefficient of variation. Datasets to determine reference curves were not available for the CSQT v1.0.

## Chapter 9. Bed Form Diversity Parameter

Functional Category: Geomorphology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Bed forms include the various channel units that maintain heterogeneity in the channel form, including riffles, runs, pools and glides (Rosgen 2014; Vermont Stream Geomorphic Assessment, Appendix M: Delineation of Stream Bed Features). The location, stability, and depth of these bed features are responsive to sediment transport forces acting against the channel boundary conditions. Bed form diversity is a function-based parameter used to assess these bed form patterns, specifically riffle-pool and step-pool sequences that comprise the dominant stream bed forms in alluvial and colluvial valleys in Colorado. This parameter evaluates bed form pattern in relation to expected patterns in channels with similar valley morphology. As such, this parameter is not a direct measure of fluvial processes but is an indicator of altered hydraulic and sediment transport processes (Knighton 1998). It is one of the original parameters described in Harman et al. (2012). Readers should refer to this document for a more detailed description of how sediment transport processes affect the development of sand and gravel bed forms.

Natural streams rarely have flat uniform beds (Knighton 1998). Instead, hydraulic and sediment transport characteristics shape the stream bed into myriad forms, depending on valley and channel slope, size of bed material (clay, silt, sand, gravel, cobble, boulder, bedrock), flow regime and numerous other factors. These bed forms reflect local variations in the sediment transport rate and are expressed as lateral and vertical variations in stream bed elevation (Knighton 1998), dissipating energy and creating habitat diversity through the formation of faster or slower, deeper or shallower sequences with coarser or finer sediment.

Numerous classifications of bed form exist (Knighton 1998). At a broad level, bed forms can be grouped into three categories: sand bed forms (e.g., ripple, dunes, plane beds, and antidunes), gravel/cobble bed forms (e.g., riffle, run, pool and glide) and step-pool bed forms. Bed form diversity is important because channel patterns provide a diversity of habitats that aquatic organisms need for survival. Macroinvertebrate communities are often most diverse in riffle habitats due in part to greater hyporheic flow. Meanwhile, pools provide fish habitat and thermal refugia, support thermal regulation, provide energy dissipation, and are an indication of how the stream is transporting and storing sediment (Knighton 1998; Allan 1995; Hauer and Lamberti 2007). Without the diversity of riffles and pools, there is a potential for loss of diversity in macroinvertebrates and fish (Mathon et al. 2013; Fischenich 2006).

In the CSQT, riffles are also defined as the crossover between meander bends. This allows the straight section in sand bed streams to also be called “riffles.” Typically the riffle term is limited to gravel bed streams (Knighton 1998). Identifying all crossovers as riffles allows for consistent assessment methods. For example, a riffle cross section or measurement in a riffle will occur in the crossover for sand- and gravel-bed streams.

Harman et al. (2012) list metrics that can be used to assess bed form diversity and can be quantified with field surveys, including: percent riffle and pool, facet (riffle/pool) slope, and pool spacing and depth variability. An additional metric, aggradation ratio, is also useful in characterizing aggradation processes in riffle sections (Rosgen 2014). Many qualitative methods are also available to assess bed forms and in-stream habitats (Somerville and Pruitt 2004) but were not considered for the CSQT because quantitative measures are available and regularly used by practitioners.

The four metrics from the WSQT v1.0 bed form diversity parameter are also used in the CSQT: pool spacing ratio, pool depth ratio, percent riffle, and aggradation ratio. These metrics are often used by practitioners in quantitative geomorphic assessments of riffle-pool and step-pool sequences (Knighton 1998; Harrelson et al. 1994; Rosgen 2014; and ELI et al. 2016). Pool spacing ratio, pool depth ratio, and percent riffle metrics should be evaluated together to characterize the overall bed form diversity of a stream reach. Aggradation ratio should also be included in meandering single-thread stream types in transport settings where the riffles are exhibiting signs of aggradation. The metric is not recommended in source or response reaches.

Metrics:

- Pool Spacing Ratio
- Pool Depth Ratio
- Percent Riffle
- Aggradation Ratio

## **9.1 Pool Spacing Ratio**

Summary:

Adequate pool spacing and the depth variability created from alternating riffles supports dynamic equilibrium and habitat-forming processes (Knighton 1998, Hey 2006). The pool spacing ratio metric measures the distance between the deepest thalweg location of sequential geomorphic pools (i.e., channel-spanning lateral-scour / meander bend pools or step-pools, not small pocket pools in riffle sections or created by localized scour around obstructions). The distance between geomorphic pools is divided by the bankfull riffle width to calculate the dimensionless pool spacing ratio. The dimensionless ratio allows for the comparison of values from different sites and drainage areas. For example, a pool spacing of 75 feet is meaningless without an understanding of stream size or drainage area; however, a pool spacing ratio of 4.0 can be compared across drainage areas, as long as the values are from the same valley morphology, bed material, and boundary condition (Hey 2006). The median pool spacing ratio from a sampling reach is entered as the field value into the CSQT. The median is used instead of the mean because the sample size per reach tends to be small with a wide range of values and it was thought that the median provided a better estimate of central tendency than the mean.

Studies have documented a connection between pool spacing ratios and channel stability and complexity, as pools serve to dissipate energy at high flows (Langbein and Leopold 1966; Gregory et al. 1994; Laub et al. 2012). If a meandering stream has a low pool spacing, it follows that riffle length will also be short, with more energy transferred to the banks and sometimes the floodplain. Evaluations of numerous stream restoration and mitigation projects by members of the CSQT SC in North Carolina, New York, and other states have shown that sites constructed with low pool-spacing ratios resulted in excessive bank erosion and sometimes floodplain erosion.

In addition to the issues caused by low pool spacing outlined above, large pool spacing values are also problematic. A large pool spacing ratio essentially means that there are a small number of geomorphic pools in the reach. In alluvial valleys, this might mean that the reach is overly

straight, and the habitat value is diminished because the length of pool habitat has been reduced. In colluvial or otherwise confined valleys, the lack of pools might mean there is not sufficient energy dissipation to achieve dynamic equilibrium.

F and G channels that represent degraded streams should be compared against the proposed, or reference stream type, as informed by channel evolution processes (Cluer and Thorne 2013; Rosgen 2014) and described in the User Manual. For example, if the existing stream type is a degraded Gc in an alluvial valley, the proposed / reference stream type and reference curve would be a C or E. Selection of the appropriate reference stream type is important for consistently applying this metric and determining a condition score in the tool. To improve consistency, guidance is included in the User Manual to assist practitioners in identifying the reference stream type.

#### Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

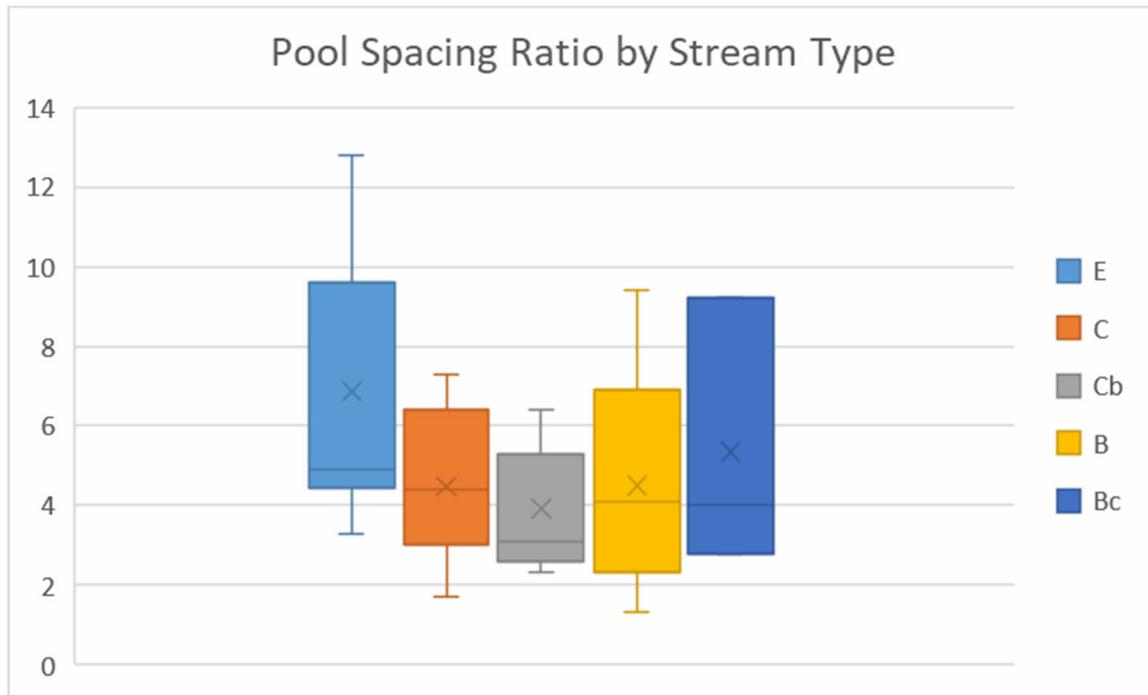
The WY geomorphic reference dataset, described in Section 1.8, consists of 51 sites that report pool spacing ratio. Data collection methods measured pool spacing ratio between the head, or beginning, of sequential pools rather than between the deepest point of sequential pools. The pool spacing calculations were revised to match the Wyoming and Colorado SQT methodology based on maximum pool depth locations and station data from longitudinal profiles at each site.

The metric accounts for differences in stream size by using bankfull width as the denominator and converting the value into a dimensionless ratio. The ratio accounts for the differences in stream size that may otherwise be relevant in determining pool spacing. Bankfull dimensions may vary based on differences in climate and runoff characteristics; however, bankfull regional curves can be used to calibrate field identifications (Dunne and Leopold 1978; Blackburn-Lynch et al. 2017).

Stratification by Rosgen stream type was used to account for the natural variability in pool spacing because it combines valley type and slope, which are known drivers of pool spacing (Knighton 1998). The WY geomorphic reference dataset was assessed to determine whether stratifications based on drainage area or region were also appropriate (see discussion in Section 9.3). Trends in the data were not apparent for these variables, so they were not used to stratify data. Results stratified by stream type are shown in Table 9-1 and Figure 9-1. Note, two reference stream channels were identified as F stream types and two outliers were identified in their stream type groupings and removed from the analysis.

**Table 9-1: Statistics for Pool Spacing Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Statistic	Pool Spacing Ratio by Stream Type				
	E	C	Cb	B	Bc
Number of Sites (n)	9	13	7	15	3
Average	6.9	4.5	3.9	4.5	5.3
Standard Deviation	3.2	1.9	1.6	2.5	3.4
Minimum	3.3	1.7	2.3	1.3	2.8
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	4.5	3.2	2.7	2.4	3.4
Median	4.9	4.4	3.1	4.1	4.0
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	9.0	6.1	5.1	6.7	6.6
Maximum	12.8	7.3	6.4	9.4	9.2



**Figure 9-1: Box Plots for Pool Spacing Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Given that single-thread perennial streams exhibit a range of stable pool spacing, the data analysis shown in Table 9-1 and Figure 9-1 was combined with best professional judgement to derive the threshold values and reference curves shown in Table 9-2.

**Table 9-2: Threshold Values for Pool Spacing Ratio**

Index Value	Field Values by Stream Type				
	E	C	Cb	B and Ba	Bc
1.00	3.5 – 5.0	4.0 – 6.0	3.7 – 5.0	3.0	3.4
0.70	3.0, 6.0	3.7, 7.0	3.0, 6.0	4.0	6.0
0.00	1.8, 8.3	3.0, 9.3	-	7.5	-

The 25<sup>th</sup> and 75<sup>th</sup> percentile values for each stream type were used to characterize the reference standard range of index scoring. Adjustments were considered depending on whether the reference curves allowed for natural variability and did not incentivize homogeneous designs. Modifications to the threshold values were made as follows: if a value was considered too low and had the potential to cause stability problems, the value was increased. If the value was considered too high and would limit the number of pools, and therefore habitat, the value was lowered. For example, meandering streams (C and E) can have stability problems if the pool spacing is too low and habitat loss if pool spacing is too high. In moderate gradient streams (B), stability problems occur if the pool spacing is too far apart.

Since the WY geomorphic reference dataset was limited to reference standard streams, the not-functioning range was extrapolated from the reference curves fit to the threshold values identified in Table 9-2. These curves were reviewed to determine if the not-functioning values were reasonable based on stability and habitat considerations.

For C stream types, a two-sided reference curve was developed to account for stability issues associated with low ratios and habitat issues associated with high ratios. Field values of 4.0 and 6.0 were selected to equal an index value of 1.00. While the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile value was 3.2, a 4.0 was set as the 1.00 index value and 3.7 was set as the 0.70 index value to equal the low end of the reference condition. As ratios become less than 3.7, pool spacing is reduced and the potential for instability goes up. Experience from the authors have shown that low pool spacing values can lead to instability especially in newly constructed channels. The field value of 6.0 closely equates to the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile value of 6.1 from the WY geomorphic reference dataset. A pool spacing ratio of 7.0 was set at the 0.70 using best professional judgement. Values greater than 7.0 were not considered likely to support fish communities at a reference condition. A 7.0 is also very close to the maximum value observed in the reference data set.

For Cb stream types, field values of 3.8 and 5.0 were selected to equal an index value of 1.00, and 3.0 and 6.0 for the 0.70 index value. These values are slightly lower than the C stream type because steeper streams have a lower sinuosity and closer pool spacing. However, since a sinuosity of 1.2 or slightly higher is a possibility, the 1.00 was set higher than the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile value to help avoid stability problems. The upper end of 5.0 closely equates to the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile.

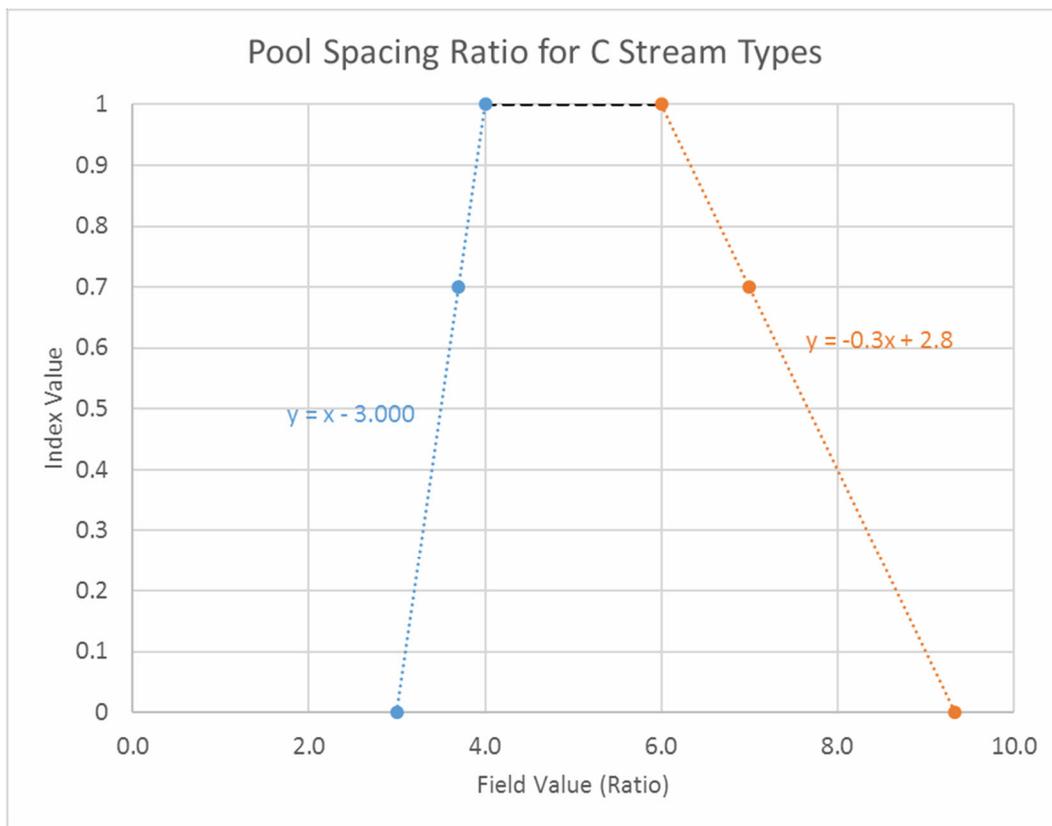
The logic for developing reference standards for E stream types is the same as the C since they exist in similar valley types. However, since the sinuosity is generally higher in E stream types, the pool spacing values can be lower. This is not evident in the reference data shown in Figure 9-1, but it is common in E stream types with more variability in the belt width and meander wavelength. Figure 9-1 may be different due to the low sample size and the resulting combination of E stream types with greatly different slopes and valley types. Until more data are collected, the values shown in Table 9-2 are considered more conservative from a stream stability and habitat perspective.

For B and Ba stream types, the 25<sup>th</sup> and 75<sup>th</sup> percentile values are 2.4 and 6.7, respectively. Generally, lower pool spacing values are better from a stability and habitat perspective if the riffle percentage is appropriate, e.g., too much pool length has been observed by the editors to create major instability problems. Therefore, the 0.70 index value was reduced to a 4.0 to encourage spacing ratios less than 6.7 and promote channel stability and habitat. Any value under 3.0 was set at an index value of 1.00 to discourage practitioners from over-structuring a stream if it wasn't needed for stability. A 0.00 index value was assigned to any field value over 7.5 due to the lack of pool habitat that this would create and potential instability (headcutting) that could occur. The logic is the same for Bc stream types, but the values were increased slightly to account for the lower slope. Lower slope streams can have pool spacing values that are slightly higher than their steeper counterparts without having stability problems.

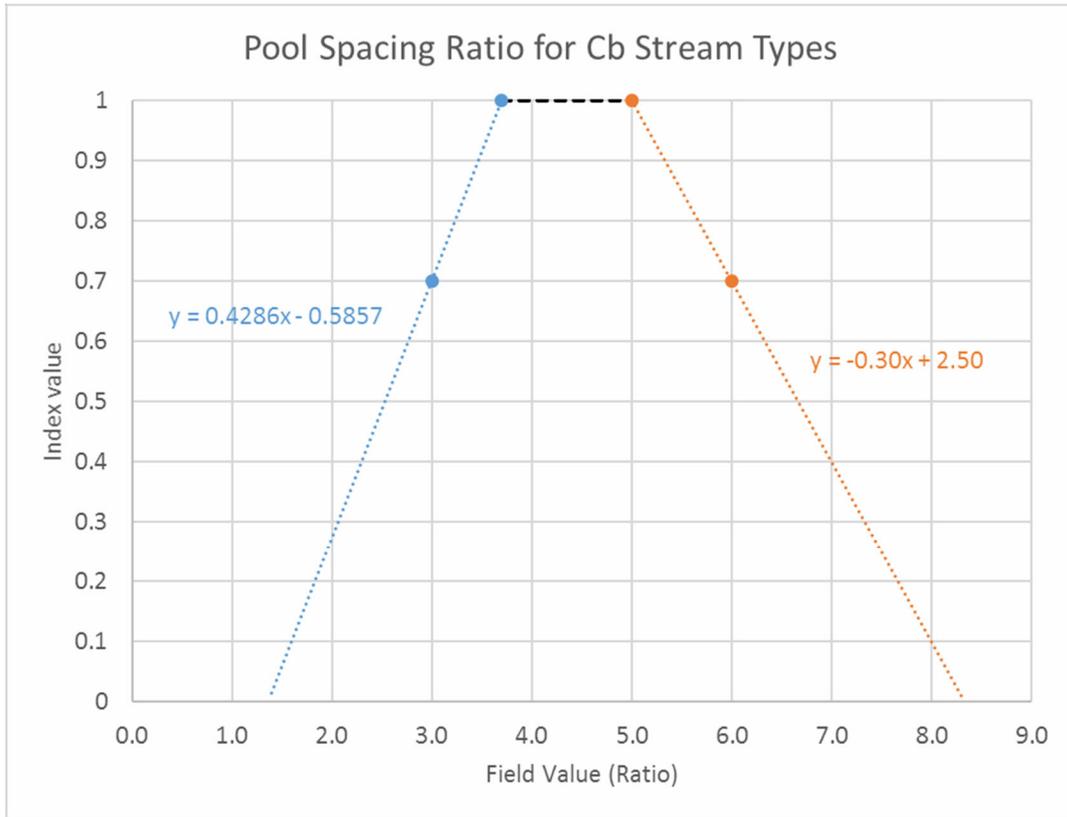
Linear relationships were fit to threshold values using the above criteria. Since both low and high pool spacing impact stability and complexity in meandering channels, either due to channel instability or reduced habitat length, respectively, the reference curves are parabolic shaped. Low values are not-functioning and high values are not-functioning. A middle range of values

supporting stream stability and pool-habitat quality are considered functioning. These relationships are shown in Figures 9-2a and 9-2b. It is important to remember that the values in the CSQT are medians; therefore, a range of values can be used in the design process. Field testing of SQTs has shown that median values in the functioning range still allow for pattern heterogeneity and do not incentivize designs with equal pool spacing.

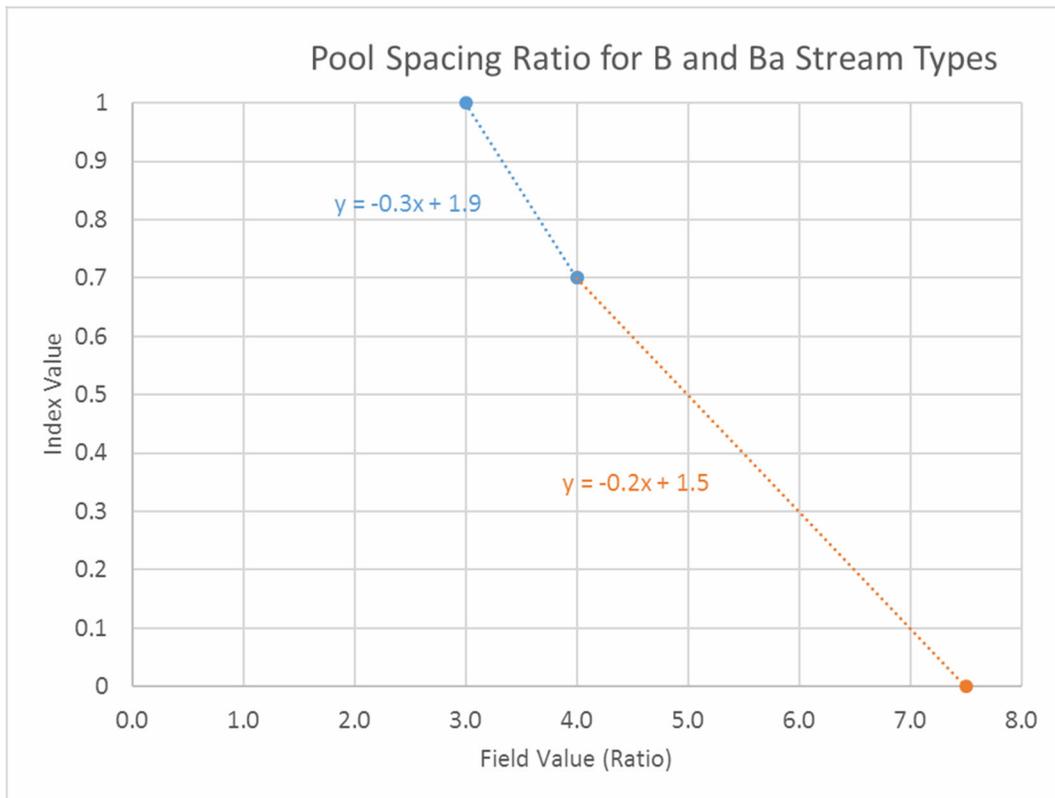
Reference streams with moderate gradients (between 3 and 5%) have naturally lower pool spacing ratios, indicating an inverse relationship between slope and pool spacing (Whittaker 1987; Chin 1989). Unlike meandering streams, moderate gradient systems dissipate less energy laterally and more energy vertically. In moderate gradient streams, low ratios represent functioning conditions from a stability and habitat perspective. Therefore, the reference curves in Figures 9-2c and 9-2d do not show a loss of function with lower index values.



**Figure 9-2a: Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves**



**Figure 9-2b: Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves**



**Figure 9-2c: Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves**

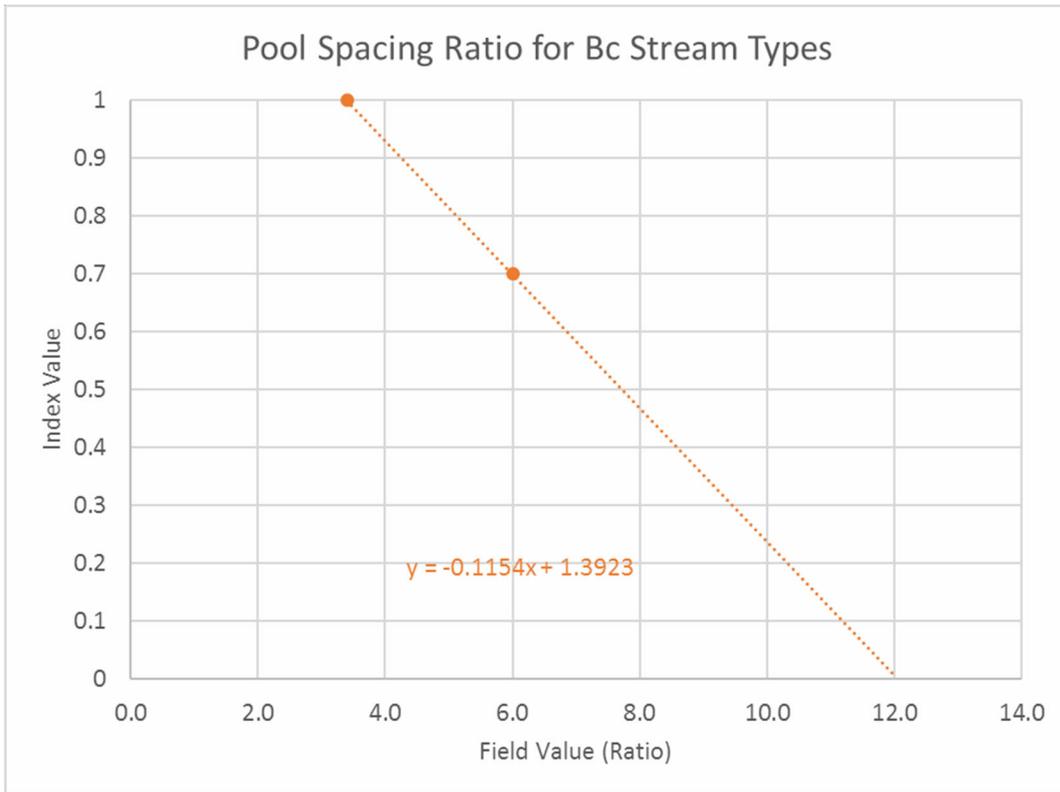


Figure 9-2d: Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves

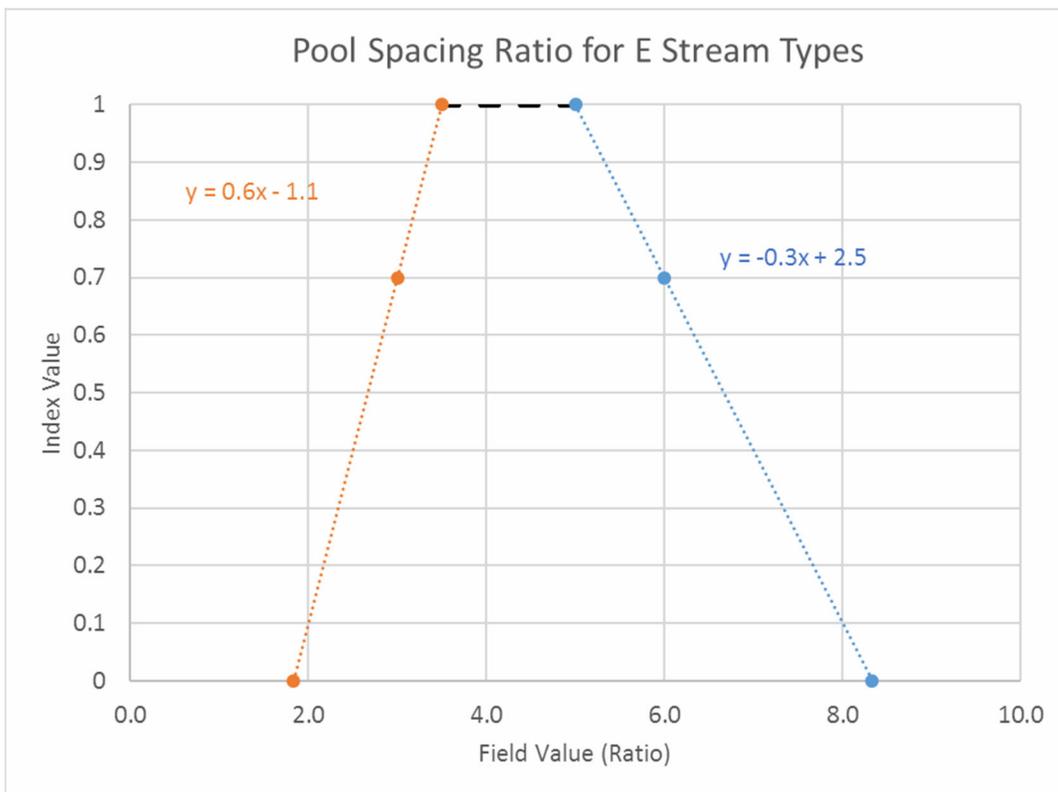


Figure 9-2e: Pool Spacing Ratio Reference Curves

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

The primary limitation of this metric is the small sample size required in the assessment sub-reach. The assessment sub-reach will likely consist of only 3 geomorphic pool spacing measurements in a meandering channel.

The presence of bedrock can influence pool spacing, and thus it may not be appropriate to include bed form diversity metrics when evaluating natural bedrock channels. Pool spacing and development in bedrock channels is controlled by the nature of the rock material, e.g., fractures, as opposed to lateral dissipation of energy through a meandering channel. This consideration is only applicable to channels that are dominated by bedrock (e.g., bedrock is the median size of the bed material) and not channels that simply have bedrock outcrops.

Reference curves were not developed for naturally occurring F and G stream types. If the stream is a naturally occurring F stream type, e.g., located in a canyon or gorge setting, this metric should not be evaluated, as no reference curves have been developed for this stream type. Additionally, this metric is not applicable to multi-thread (D and DA) stream types or ephemeral channels because a predictable pool spacing is not typically found in these environments (Bull and Kirkby 2002).

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the pool spacing ratio will not accurately represent bed forming processes. Information on verifying bankfull stage is provided in the User Manual.

The reference curves were derived using a geomorphic reference dataset primarily from the mountainous regions of Wyoming. Additional testing is desirable to determine whether different reference curves will be necessary for Colorado.

This metric stratifies reference curves by Rosgen stream type. Other geomorphic classification approaches may also be appropriate for stratifying reference curves for this metric (Buffington and Montgomery 2013) and may broaden the applicability of this metric to additional morphologies common to Colorado. Additional data collection and analyses would be required to adapt the tool and reference curves for use with other classification approaches.

## **9.2 Pool Depth Ratio**

### Summary:

This metric measures the bankfull depth of the deepest point of each pool within the sampling reach. Both geomorphic and significant pools are included in this metric (note: this is different than the pool spacing metric above). The bankfull pool depth is normalized by the bankfull mean riffle depth to calculate the dimensionless pool depth ratio. The average pool depth ratio from a sampling reach is entered as the field value into the CSQT. The average is used instead of the median because typically the sample size is larger and the range lower than the pool spacing ratio.

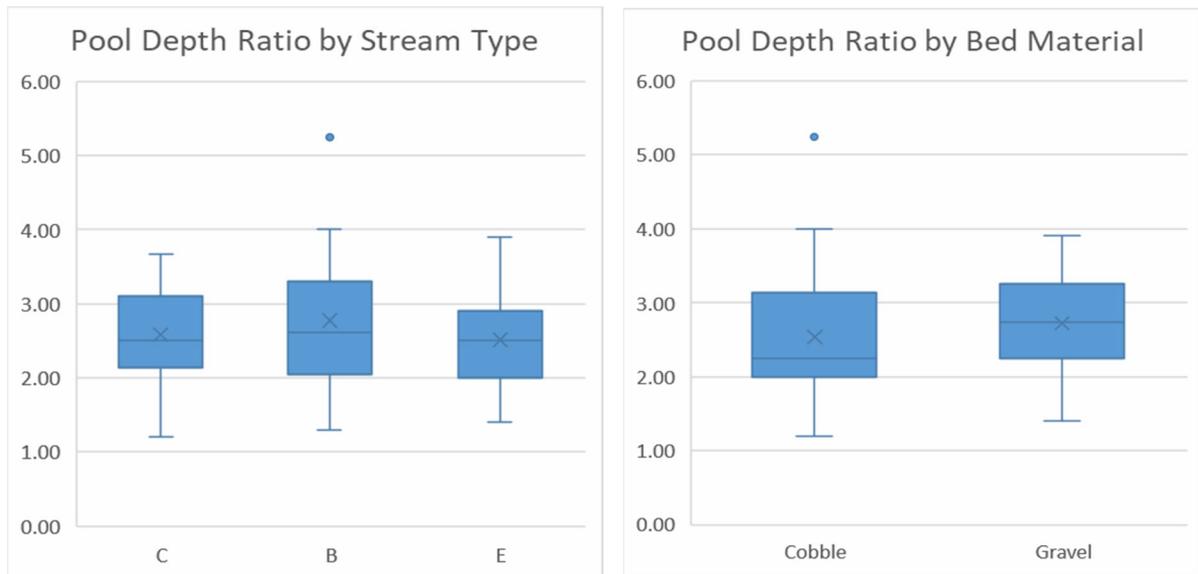
Pool depth ratio can provide information of how the stream is transporting and storing sediment. For example, if the outside meander bend in a transport system has filled with sediment, this can be an indication of an aggradation problem, as the channel cannot transport the sediment load through the meander bend. In combination with pool spacing ratio and percent riffle metrics, the pool depth ratio characterizes the bed form diversity of a stream reach (Harman et. al. 2012).

Reference Curve Development:

**Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.**

Reference curves were based on analysis of the WY geomorphic reference dataset described in Section 1.8. The WY geomorphic reference dataset consists of 54 sites that report pool depth ratio. The dataset was assessed to determine whether stratification based on stream type, bed material, slope, or region (see discussion in Section 9.3) were appropriate. Scaling for stream size is accounted for in the metric by using the bankfull riffle mean depth as the denominator.

Differences in slope and region were not apparent, and only slight differences were noted based on stream type or bed material (Figure 9-3). The median values for Rosgen C, B, and E stream types are similar, but there is slightly more variability between the 75<sup>th</sup> percentiles and the minimum and maximum values. For bed material, there is a slightly higher median value for cobble-bed streams, but the range of depths is higher for the gravel-bed streams. Note that there were no sand bed streams in the dataset.



**Figure 9-3: Box Plots for Pool Depth Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Because there were no meaningful differences in pool depth ratio based on stream type or bed material, one reference curve was implemented for all streams without stratification. The statistics for the WY geomorphic reference dataset are provided in Table 9-3.

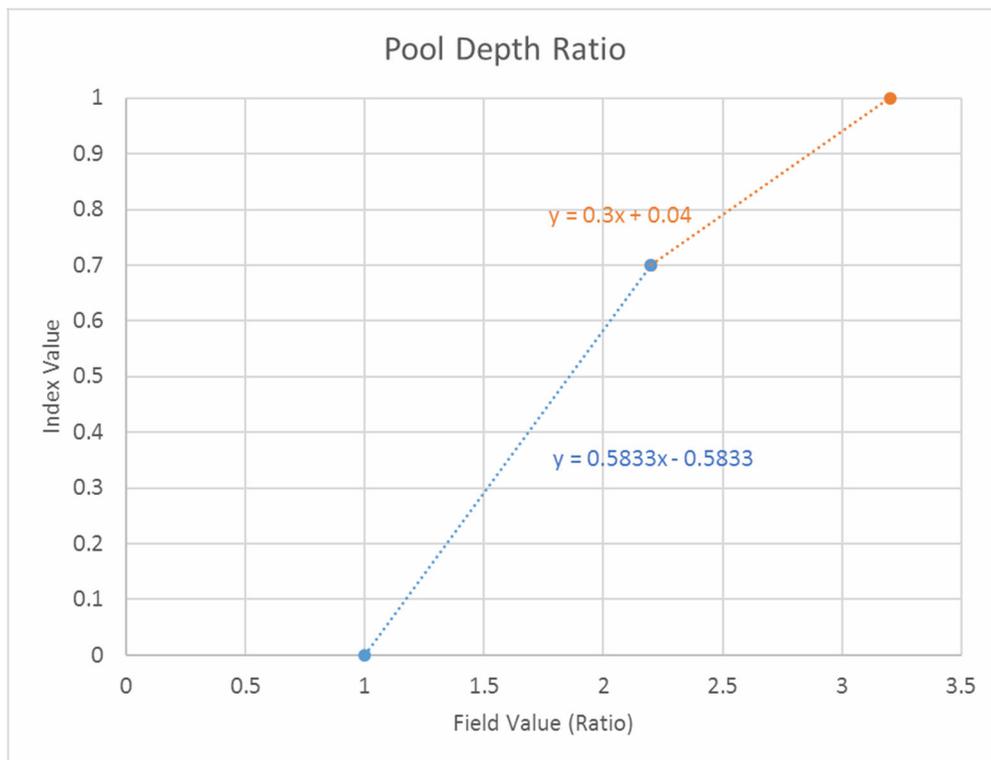
Using the premise that deep pools have greater ecological benefits than shallow pools, the threshold for the lower end of the functioning range was set at 2.2 to match the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile from the reference standard dataset. The minimum index value of 0.00 was set at 1.0, which means that no pools occurred that were greater than the bankfull mean depth. The maximum index value (1.00) was determined using the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile of 3.2. Because all data in Table 9-3 came from reference standard reaches, no threshold value was selected for the functioning-at-risk and not-functioning ranges. Threshold values are shown in Table 9-4. A broken linear relationship was fit to the identified threshold values to develop the reference curve (Figure 9-4).

**Table 9-3: Statistics for Pool Depth Ratio from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Statistic	Pool Depth Ratio
Number of Sites (n)	54
Average	2.7
Standard Deviation	0.8
Minimum	1.2
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	2.2
Median	2.5
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	3.2
Maximum	5.3

**Table 9-4: Threshold Values for Pool Depth Ratio**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	3.2
0.70	2.2
0.00	1.0



**Figure 9-4: Pool Depth Ratio Reference Curves**

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the pool depth ratio will not accurately represent bed forming processes. When possible, localized regional curves and flood frequency analysis should be used to verify the field indicators of bankfull. Information on verifying bankfull information is provided in the User Manual.

The WY geomorphic reference dataset used to derive the reference curves is from single-thread, perennial streams in the mountainous regions of Wyoming. Testing is desirable to determine whether additional or modified reference curves are needed for Colorado, particularly in intermittent, ephemeral, and braided systems. Sand bed streams may have lower pool depth ratios but should be evaluated using the CSQT recognizing that the current reference curves may not accurately characterize the level of functioning in these systems.

### **9.3 Percent Riffle**

#### Summary:

This metric measures the length of riffles (including runs) within the sample reach. The crossover section in sand bed streams is counted as the riffle. The crossover is the straight section of channel between two meander bends. The total length of riffles and runs is divided by the total reach length to calculate the percent riffle.

Pools and riffles provide valuable habitat and both are needed to support various aquatic species and dissipate energy within a reach. The riffle is the natural grade-control feature of the stream, providing floodplain connection and vertical stability (Knighton 1998). Much of the discussion regarding stream function presented in the pool spacing ratio and pool depth metric summaries applies to this metric as well. While the pool spacing ratio quantifies the frequency of pools within a reach, this metric quantifies the relative prevalence of riffle habitat length throughout the reach. Streams that have too much riffle length also have a low percentage of pools. Conversely, streams that have a low percentage of riffle also have a high percentage of pool. The appropriate proportion of riffles and pools is necessary to support dynamic equilibrium and habitat for in-stream biota. Percent riffle works with the pool spacing and pool depth ratio metrics to characterize bed form diversity.

Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

Stratification was modified for the CSQT, removing a unique bioregion stratification that was applicable to Wyoming. Reference curves are based on analysis of the WY geomorphic reference dataset described in Section 1.8. The dataset included profile data that identified bed features, and these data were used to calculate a percent riffle for each of 51 reference sites in the mountainous regions of Wyoming; one site was removed as an outlier.

The WY geomorphic reference dataset was assessed using various possible stratifications including bioregion, stream type, drainage area, slope, and bed material. Trends in percent riffle based on stream type, bed material, and drainage area were not observed in the data, though differences in percent riffle were observed in streams of different slope. A 3% slope break matches well with other literature showing that mountain streams with slopes greater than 3% often have a stair-like appearance (Chin 1989; Abrahams et al. 1995) and are riffle dominated. These trends matched professional experience of the WSTT and the results from the WY geomorphic reference dataset are shown in Table 9-5.

Note, the WSQT v1.0 included unique reference curves for the volcanic mountains and valleys bioregion of Wyoming. Streams in this bioregion had higher percent riffle values than the rest of the data. Based on this observation, the decision was made to develop specific reference curves for this bioregion in the WSQT. Because this ecoregion does not occur within Colorado, this reference curve and stratification were not included in the CSQT.

**Table 9-5: Statistics for Percent Riffle from the WY Geomorphic Reference Dataset**

Statistic	Percent Riffle (%)	
	Slope < 3%	Slope ≥ 3%
Number of Sites (n)	20	6
Geometric Mean	52	72
Average	55	73
Standard Deviation	18	8
Minimum	28	60
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	39	68
Median	57	74
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	69	78
Maximum	88	83

Threshold values presented in Table 9-6 were developed using the stratification and data outlined above:

- For streams with low slope (< 3%), the functioning range of scoring was set equal to the interquartile range observed in the WY geomorphic reference dataset. The maximum index score within the functioning range was determined using best professional judgement.
- The number of sites with a slope of 3% or greater was limited and best professional judgement was used to set the functioning range of scoring equal to the range of values observed in the dataset. The maximum index score within the functioning range was set equal to the interquartile range observed in the WY geomorphic reference dataset.
- Since the WY geomorphic reference dataset was limited to reference streams, the not-functioning range was determined by extrapolating the curves.

The best-fit relationship for percent riffle is a two-sided reference curve, which reflects lower function in systems where there is very high or very low percent riffle. Channel stability and macroinvertebrate habitat can be negatively affected by low percent riffle, and fish habitat can be negatively affected by high percent riffle (Clifford and Richards 1992). Linear relationships were fit to identified threshold values (Figure 9-5).

**Table 9-6: Threshold Values for Percent Riffle**

Index Value	Field Value (%)	
	Slope < 3%	Slope ≥ 3%
1.00	50 – 60	68 – 78
0.70	39, 69	60, 83

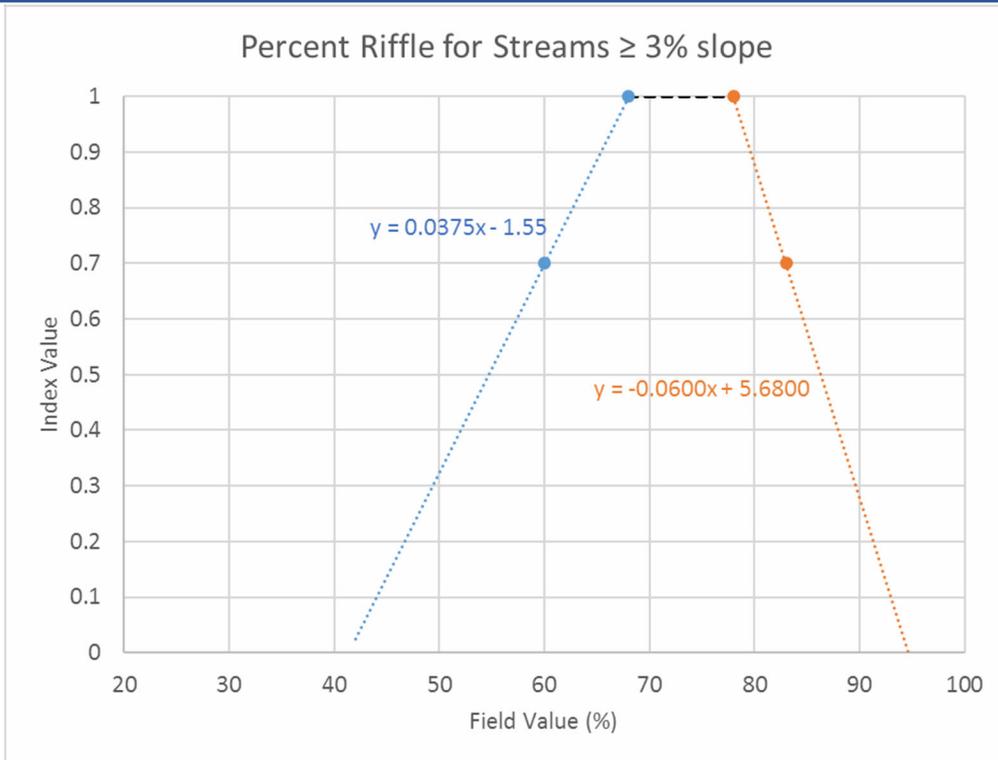


Figure 9-5a: Percent Riffle Reference Curves

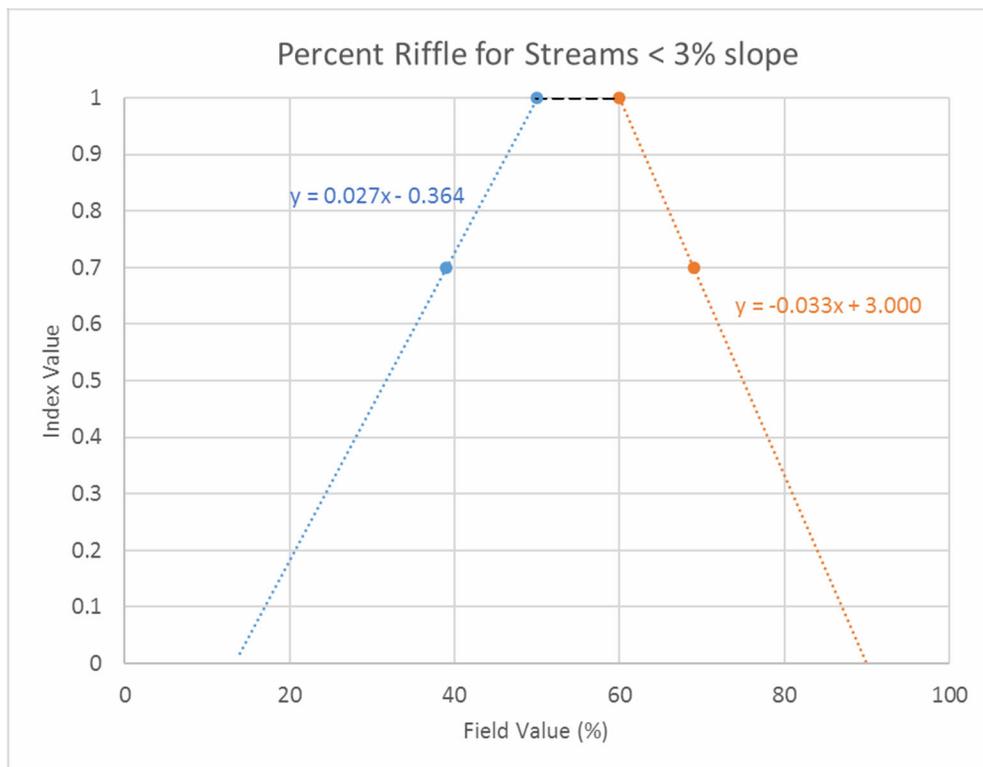


Figure 9-5b: Percent Riffle Reference Curves

#### Limitations and Data Gaps:

The WY geomorphic reference dataset that was the primary reference in deriving the reference curves is from the mountainous regions of Wyoming. Data collection and testing is needed to determine whether different reference curves and further stratification will be necessary for Colorado.

### **9.4 Aggradation Ratio**

#### Summary:

The aggradation ratio is an application of the riffle width depth ratio (W/D) compared to a reference W/D to assess the degree of aggradation in the project reach. The W/D is the bankfull riffle width divided by the mean depth (Rosgen 2014). Mean depth is the riffle bankfull cross sectional area divided by the riffle bankfull width. Within the assessment segment, each riffle exhibiting signs of excessive deposition should be surveyed and the W/D calculated. The aggradation ratio is the W/D measured at the widest riffle in the sampling reach.

Deposition of sediments within a channel is a natural fluvial process, but excessive aggradation can be an indicator of sediment imbalance, where sediment supply exceeds the stream's transport capacity. Accumulation of sediments in pools would result in a lower pool depth ratio, which is captured in the bed form diversity parameter. Similarly, accumulations of sediment in a riffle (e.g. forming a mid-channel bar) would yield a higher W/D than would be expected from a stable riffle.

The aggradation ratio was developed based on the W/D ratio state described by Rosgen (2014) to assess departure from a reference condition caused by streambank erosion, excessive deposition, or direct mechanical impacts that lead to an over-wide channel. The W/D ratio state method assesses increases and decreases in W/D to show departure from reference. Increasing W/Ds represent aggradation risk and decreasing W/Ds represent degradation risk. Degradation risk is assessed in the CSQT using the BHR. Since this metric is meant to only assess aggradation, only the increasing W/D method is used.

#### Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use in Colorado.***

Reference curves were developed using the stability ratings provided in W/D ratio state, which show the ratio of an observed W/D over an expected W/D. The expected W/D should come from reference reach streams of the same stream type as the proposed or design stream type. In addition, hydraulic and sediment transport models, such as Torizzo and Pitlick (2004), may be used to select a channel dimension (along with slope) that yields a stable W/D. The channel stability descriptions presented by Rosgen (2014) in the W/D ratio state are provided in Table 9-7. The stability ratings are calculated by dividing the observed W/D by the reference W/D. The stable range is 1.0 to 1.2 meaning that observed W/Ds are 100% to 120% of reference. As the ratio increases, the risk of aggradation increases. When the value exceeds 140% of reference condition, the channel is likely to be unstable due to aggradation. Based on these values, thresholds for the aggradation ratio were developed and are shown in Table 9-8 and the curve is shown in Figure 9-6. Given the overlap between stability rating categories, the decision was

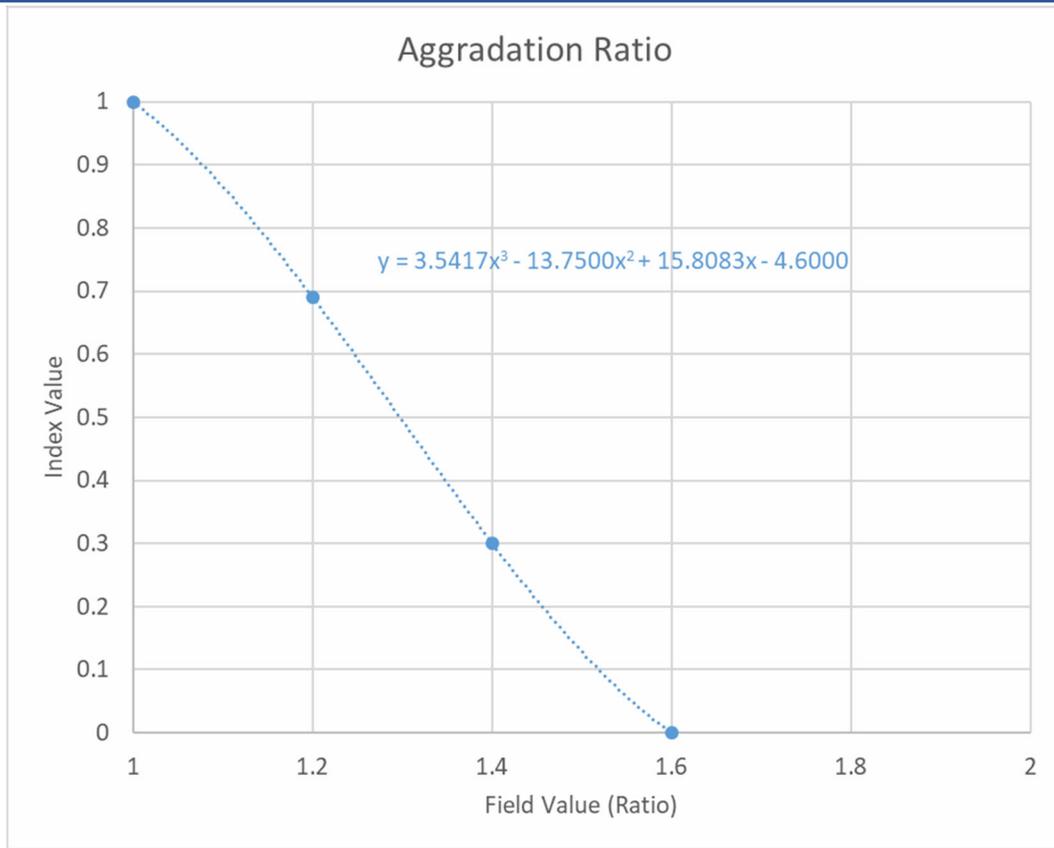
made to have the moderately stable range define the functioning-at-risk range of scoring (0.30-0.69).

**Table 9-7: Width Depth Ratio State Categories (Rosgen 2014)**

Width Depth Ratio State	Stability Rating
1.0 – 1.2	Stable
1.2 – 1.4	Moderately Stable
1.4 – 1.6	Unstable
1.6 – 1.8	Highly Unstable

**Table 9-8: Threshold Values for Aggradation Ratio**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	1.0
0.69	1.2
0.30	1.4
0.00	1.6



**Figure 9-6: Aggradation Ratio Reference Curve**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

If bankfull dimensions are not accurately determined for a site, then the aggradation ratio will not accurately represent bed form processes. When possible, localized regional curves and flood frequency analysis should be used to verify the field indicators of bankfull. Information on verifying bankfull information is provided in the User Manual.

Aggradation ratio is not applicable to braided (D) stream types since the width of the channels is often the same as the valley width (Rosgen 2009). Also, reference curves were not developed for naturally occurring F and G stream types. If the stream is a naturally occurring F stream type, e.g., located in a canyon or gorge setting, this metric should not be evaluated, as no reference curves have been developed for this stream type.

## Chapter 10. Riparian Vegetation Parameter

Functional Category: Geomorphology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Riparian areas are zones of direct interaction between aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems characterized by distinct biological, geomorphic and hydrologic processes (Gregory et al. 1991). Riparian plant communities play a critical role in supporting channel stability, as well as physicochemical and biological processes, and that is why it is included in the geomorphic level of the stream functions pyramid (Harman et al. 2012). Riparian areas support numerous instream and floodplain functions, including cover and shading, temperature moderation, channel stability, filtration of excess nutrients, sediments, and pollutants, source areas for carbon, nutrients and wood recruitment, floodplain roughness, terrestrial habitat and wildlife migration corridors, and plant diversity, species richness, and functional integrity. Some of these riparian functions are structural, such as stream shading or floodplain roughness, while other functions are influenced by the composition of riparian plant communities. As such, it is important to include riparian vegetation metrics that characterize both the structure and composition of these communities.

The four metrics from the WSQT v1.0 riparian vegetation parameter are also used in the CSQT with slight modifications. These metrics include riparian extent, absolute woody vegetation cover, absolute herbaceous vegetation cover, and percent native cover. Cover metrics consolidate data collected from both banks into a single CSQT field value per metric, which is standard among other methods.

Absolute woody vegetation cover is used to characterize woody vegetation, which is a primary component of many western riparian systems and provides important structural and biophysical functions. For naturally herbaceous systems, absolute herbaceous vegetation cover is evaluated instead of woody cover. Percent native cover considers the relative cover of native species and is the one compositional metric currently included in the tool. The riparian extent metric evaluates the amount of potential riparian area currently occupied by riparian vegetation (e.g., hydrophytic species and/or more vigorous vegetation growth) to characterize the lateral extent of the stream corridor.

Other metrics that were considered, but not included in the tool are stem density and hydrophytic vegetation. Stem density is an additional woody vegetation metric that serves as an indicator of recruitment and establishment of woody vegetation following disturbance. This metric is not included in the CSQT but may be requested by a regulatory agency as an additional regulatory performance standard within the first 5 years of a full restoration project. Hydrophytic vegetation may be considered as its own metric in future versions of the tool, because shifts in vegetation composition can be a valuable, direct indicator of changes in underlying processes (e.g., hydrology, flow regime, floodplain connectivity) associated with a project. Additional data collection and analysis related to hydrophytic vegetation and other compositional metrics are being considered. Hydrophytic vegetation data can be obtained via the data collection methods in the CSQT, allowing the CSQT SC to evaluate how this metric could be developed and applied in the future.

Availability of species-level data from the CNHP dataset (Kittel et al. 1999; Section 1.8) provided the opportunity to align methods with existing protocols required by the Corps for wetland delineations (USACE 1987, USACE 2008b, USACE 2010a, USACE 2010b). Data collection includes visual estimates of the percent absolute cover of each plant species within nested plot types to determine vegetation abundance, structure, composition, and complexity and requires plant identification expertise. Corps field staff and many practitioners are already familiar with these methods, and wetland delineations will likely be conducted where stream projects also contain wetlands in the project area. Data from the CNHP dataset was used to evaluate the cover metrics and develop reference curves for the WSQT v1.0 and CSQT.

In the WSQT and CSQT Beta Version, it was recommended to evaluate both herbaceous and woody vegetation cover metrics at all sites irrespective of stream condition. For the CSQT v1.0, additional analyses were performed to assess this recommendation. Specifically, a Wilcoxon two-sample test was conducted to determine whether there were significant differences between reference and degraded sites in the dataset using current stratifications. For woody sites, there were no statistically significant differences in herbaceous vegetation cover between reference and degraded sites, and likewise for herbaceous sites, there were no statistically significant differences in woody cover between reference and non-reference sites. As such, the recommendation to apply either the woody or herbaceous vegetation cover metrics based on the reference expectation was modified: if the reference expectation is >20% woody cover, the woody cover metric should be applied and if the reference expectation is <20% woody cover, the herbaceous cover metric should be applied.

Metrics:

- Riparian Extent
- Woody Vegetation Cover
- Herbaceous Vegetation Cover
- Percent Native Cover

## **10.1 Riparian Extent**

Summary:

The riparian extent metric is the proportion of the expected riparian area that currently contains riparian vegetation and is free from utility-related, urban, or otherwise soil disturbing land uses and development. This metric has been modified from the metric originally presented in the WSQT and in the CSQT Beta Version. Instead of being calculated using measurements of riparian width from four locations within the project area, the metric now relies on a calculation of riparian extent for the entire project area. This modification was made to provide a more accurate characterization of riparian extent, and to allow for the use of desktop area measurement tools with field verification.

This metric characterizes the current extent of the riparian area, as compared with the reference expectation for that site. The current, observed riparian area is a measure of the current extent of the riparian zone, and this metric is informed by a combination of remote data and field verification at the time of the assessment. The reference expectation, or expected riparian area, is an estimate of the natural or historic extent of the riparian area. Riparian width is influenced by

reach-scale channel and valley characteristics (Polvi et al. 2011). As such, the riparian extent metric uses an O/E approach to identify the current extent of the riparian zone compared with the expected extent based on reach-scale processes and drivers. The expected riparian area is delineated using hydrologic and geomorphic indicators on the landscape, aerial imagery, or meander width ratio where natural indicators of riparian extent are no longer observable due to development. Additional information on data collection methods is provided in the User Manual.

Characterizing the extent of riparian zones is important, as functioning riparian zones influence (and are influenced by) many instream and floodplain processes (Fischer and Fischenich 2000, Mayer et al. 2005). Many existing methodologies focus on fixed buffer widths, yet these approaches can be limited as they don't account for the natural variability in riparian zone widths, and thus may not adequately characterize their functional significance. For example, in high gradient headwater streams, riparian zones are naturally narrow, and may not extend as far as a fixed buffer width. Alternatively, in broad, alluvial systems, a fixed buffer width may only characterize a small fraction of the floodplain or riparian area extent. Thus, the approach outlined here is intended to better characterize the natural functional capacity of riparian zones, by comparing the current riparian extent against the expected, or reference, extent determined from the predominant processes that control riparian zones.

According to Merritt et al. (2017), the edge of a riparian area can be determined using three criteria:

- 1) Substrate attributes—the portion of the valley bottom influenced by fluvial processes under the current climatic regime,
- 2) Biotic attributes—riparian vegetation characteristic of the region and plants known to be adapted to shallow water tables and fluvial disturbance, and
- 3) Hydrologic attributes—the area of the valley bottom flooded at the stage of the 100-year recurrence interval flow (Ries et al. 2004).

*Substrate and topographic attributes:* The extent of the riparian zone is driven by topographic and geomorphological patterns, as well as the dominant hydrological processes (Polvi et al. 2011, Salo et al. 2016). For example, in a study on riparian zones in the Colorado Front Range, Polvi et al. (2011) found that riparian width was correlated with gradient and valley geometry (e.g., connectedness, valley width and entrenchment). Even in altered systems, substrate, topographic and geomorphic indicators may be present to determine the expected extent of the riparian zone. These indicators may include terracing or other breaks in slope between the bankfull and valley edge, fluvial deposited sediments, or a lack of upland soil formation. In areas of extensive floodplain development where natural topographic or geomorphic indicators are not identifiable, a meander width ratio based on valley type should be used to determine the expected riparian width.

*Biotic attributes:* The extent of characteristic riparian vegetation will change in response to changes in floodplain connectivity and hydrologic processes. As such, the extent of the riparian vegetation is used to determine the current or observed extent of the riparian area. For purposes of this metric, riparian areas are defined as areas with distinctly different vegetation species and/or more robust growth forms than adjacent areas. Riparian areas are often characterized by the predominance of hydrophytic species that have adapted to shallow water tables and fluvial disturbances. It should be noted that in many western states, riparian communities are comprised of a combination of hydrophytic and upland species, including greasewood and sagebrush. The presence of upland species does not preclude an area from

being classified as riparian, however, the absence of any hydrophytic species likely would. Where riparian areas contain species similar to adjacent areas, more vigorous or robust growth forms should be observed in order to classify it as a riparian area (USFWS 2009).

*Hydrologic attributes:* Riparian extent can relate to flow stage for a specified recurrence interval, although this relationship varies across process domains (Polvi et al. 2011). For example, Polvi et al. (2011) found that in high elevation unconfined valleys the riparian extent is significantly broader than the 100-year stage; in high elevation confined valleys it aligns with the 100-year stage; in unconfined low elevation montane systems, it is not well predicted by 10, 50 or 100-year flow stages; and in confined low elevation montane systems, the riparian extent aligns with the 10-year recurrence interval (and is significantly narrower than the 50 and 100-year stage). Recognizing the challenges in flow-based predictors of riparian extent, Merritt et al. (2017) conservatively recommends the use of the 100-year recurrence interval flow stage to delineate riparian area extent. Where hydrologic attributes have been influenced by anthropogenic modification, they may no longer be useful to predict expected riparian extent but could still be used to inform the current extent of the riparian area.

#### Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.***

This metric was developed by the Wyoming Stream Technical Team specifically to replace fixed buffer width approaches included in other SQTs (e.g., Harman and Jones 2017, TDEC 2018). Limited data and peer reviewed literature are available to inform thresholds and reference curves, as much of the existing literature is related to fixed-width buffers. Thus, reference curves were developed primarily using best professional judgement. The reference curves and thresholds are intended to encourage and incentivize restoration activities that restore riparian and floodplain connectivity or remove stressors and human land uses from the riparian zone.

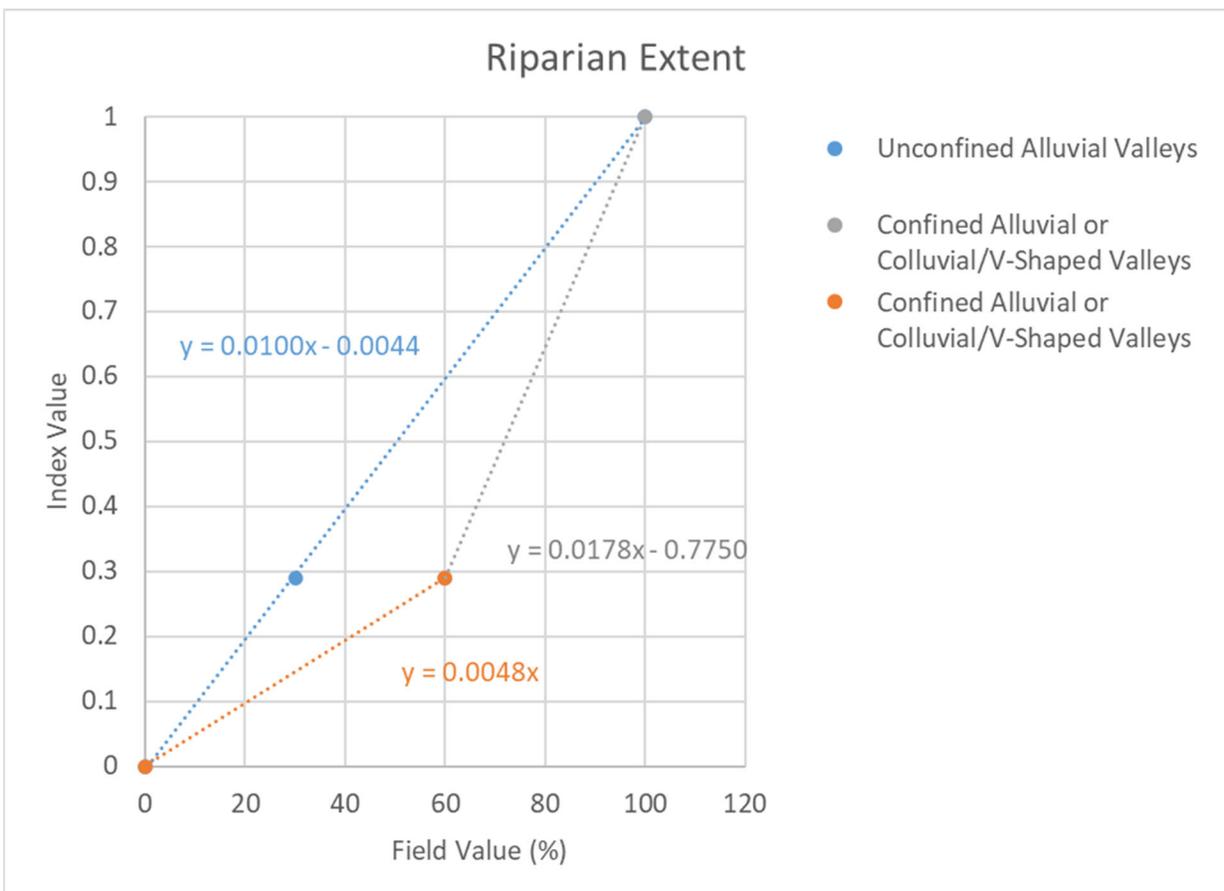
Stratification of reference curves took into consideration how hydrologic and geomorphic processes drive riparian zone development. Merritt et al. (2017) recommends stratifying riparian areas by valley type using a Hydrogeomorphic Valley Classification framework, which identifies nine valley types, but also acknowledges that other simpler classification approaches (e.g., Rosgen 1996) may also be useful to place a stream segment within its watershed context. For this metric, we stratified based on valley type, recognizing the differences in hillslope and valley bottom processes that influence riparian extent in confined and unconfined valleys (Table 10-1).

Once stratified into valley types, consideration was given as to how the influence of potential stressors in the floodplain or adjacent stream area and changes to the hydrologic regime would affect the degree to which riparian zones function, and in turn, support instream functions. For example, whether the extent of riparian zone modification may substantially affect the recruitment of wood and organic matter, nutrient and carbon cycling, flood retention, buffering from sediment and pollutant influxes, and habitat availability (Fischer and Fischenich 2000; Sweeney and Newbold 2014). In confined and colluvial valleys, where streams and riparian zones are constrained by hillslope processes, riparian width is naturally narrower, and consequently, stressors within that area could be disproportionately higher. A reduction in riparian width of 30% would likely reflect a substantially altered, or not-functioning condition, with little remaining flood prone area and a reduced capacity to recruit wood and organic matter and buffer the stream from sediment or pollutant influxes. This magnitude of riparian area loss may no longer support instream and floodplain functions. In unconfined valleys, where riparian areas are naturally

broader, a greater proportion of the riparian area may be affected (e.g., 60%) before a similar loss in functionality might occur.

**Table 10-1: Threshold Values for Riparian Extent**

Index Value	Field Value (%)	
	Unconfined Alluvial Valleys	Confined Alluvial and Colluvial Valleys
1.00	100	100
0.30	30	60
0.00	0	0



**Figure 10-1: Riparian Extent Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

Because this is a new metric and reference curves are based on best professional judgement, additional data are needed to test and possibly expand these criteria. Reference curves may benefit from additional stratification that accounts for natural variability in riparian width beyond the valley type approach applied here. This metric would benefit from additional validation,

review and refinement as the tool is applied.

Beta testing in Wyoming revealed challenges in measuring the expected riparian width in the field, including difficulties in accurately measuring straight line distances in dense vegetation and a lack of readily observable geomorphic and hydrologic features in degraded sites, which are often no longer present due to site grading and/or development. This metric was updated in the most recent version of the CSQT to address this challenge. Instead of being calculated using measurements of riparian width from four locations within the project area, the metric now relies on a calculation of riparian area extent for the entire project area. The User Manual includes several alternatives for determining the expected riparian width, including use of aerial photography, digital elevation models or calculations of a meander width ratio. Additional testing and review are needed to evaluate the relative accuracy and applicability of these approaches.

## **10.2 Woody Vegetation Cover**

### **Summary:**

Riparian areas in the western U.S. are predominately characterized by a woody canopy (Youngblood et al. 1985; Jones and Walford 1995; Walford 1996; Walford et al. 2001; Jones et al. 2001). As noted above, riparian communities are often comprised of a combination of hydrophytic and upland species. Kittel et al. (1999) describe nearly 120 riparian woody plant assemblages in Colorado, including coniferous, deciduous, and mixed forests, and shrubland communities.

Many riparian areas in the western U.S. are heavily influenced by changes in land use, fire regimes, grazing, flow modification, and the influx of non-native and invasive species (Macfarlane et al. 2017). Tamarisk (*Tamarix ramosissima*) and Russian olive (*Elaeagnus angustifolia*) have been prolific invaders, and many restoration efforts target the management and eradication of these invasive species (Shafroth et al. 2002). Riparian areas in the plains and basins that historically (pre-European settlement) contained patches of timber or brush were progressively reduced to predominately herbaceous communities for over a century due to the rise of the plains horse culture, migration of white pioneers, and the advance of farming and stock-raising (West and Ruark 2004).

Because of the characteristic role woody vegetation plays in riparian areas, a woody vegetation metric is important to include in the CSQT. Woody vegetation cover provides an indication of the longevity and sustainability of perennial vegetation in the riparian corridor (Kaufmann et al. 1999, Kaufmann and Hughes 2006). The woody cover metric is based on a visual plot-based vegetation assessment. The field value for this metric reflects the sum of the absolute cover of all woody species and can be greater than 100% cover. Methods are outlined in the User Manual.

### **Reference Curve Development:**

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.***

Data collection methods for this metric align with the 1987 Wetland Delineation Manual methods, as Corps field staff and many practitioners are already familiar with this form of data collection. These methods provide absolute cover by species. The reference curves were developed using the CNHP dataset and verified using a small data collection effort in Wyoming.

**Colorado Natural Heritage Program:** Woody vegetation cover values were calculated for woody sites in the CNHP dataset, described in Section 1.8. Woody vegetation cover values were developed by summing absolute cover values for all woody species. Shrub species cover values were combined with tree species cover values into a combined woody stratum. Statistics were derived from the CNHP dataset for the reference standard (R) and degraded (D) sites within each ecoregion (Table 10-2). Sample sizes were limited, particularly for degraded sites and for all sites within the plains and tablelands (included in the plains category) ecoregions (Table 10-2).

Multiple options were evaluated for stratification, including ecoregion, CDPHE biotype, and valley entrenchment, to determine whether there were significant differences between reference and degraded sites in the dataset. When the dataset was stratified by ecoregion, significant differences between reference and degraded sites were observed (Figures 10-2 and 10-3). Stratification by CDPHE biotype also showed significant differences between reference and degraded sites for mountains and transitional ecoregions, but not for plains. Only a subset of sites within the dataset could be evaluated for valley entrenchment, and of these, only unconfined multi-threaded sites (Rosgen D stream types) showed significant differences in woody cover between reference and degraded sites. These results support the stratification of this metric by ecoregion.

**Table 10-2: Statistics for Woody Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset**

Statistic	Woody Vegetation Cover (%) by Ecoregion and Condition			
	Mountains & Basins		Plains	
	Degraded	Reference	Degraded	Reference
Number of Sites (n)	11	385	11	6
95 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	104	177	157	75
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	95	122	101	69
Median	71	94	92	59
Mean	68	98	95	57
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	46	69	76	53

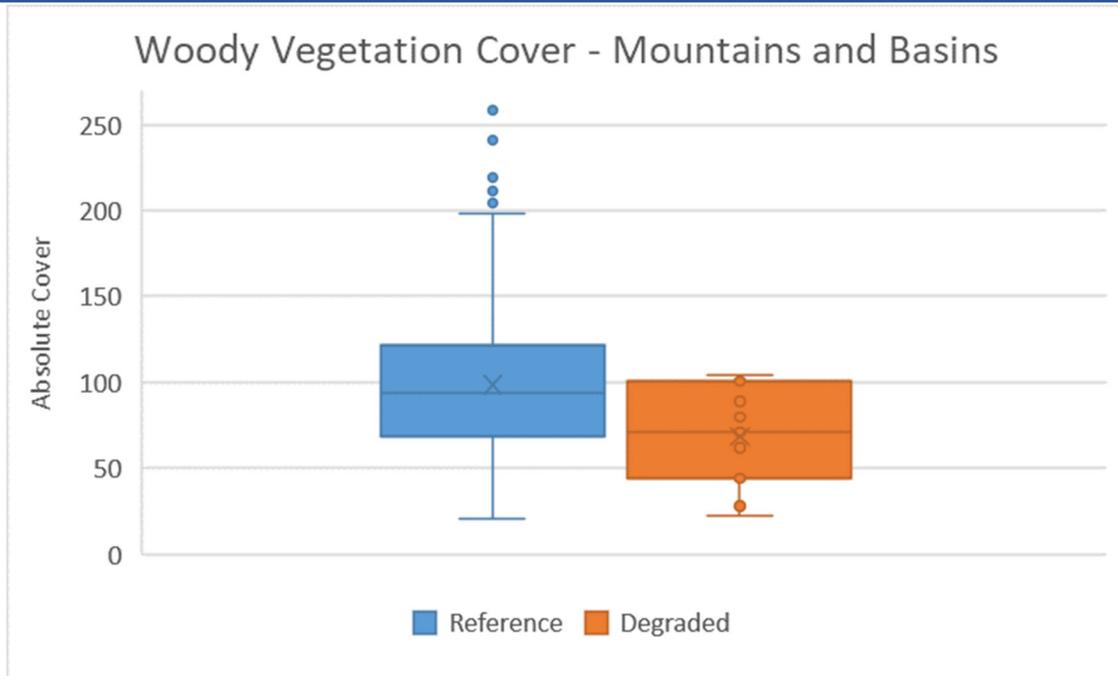


Figure 10-2: Box plots for Woody Vegetation Cover for the Mountain and Basin ecoregions from the CNHP Dataset. Stratified by Condition (Reference or Degraded).

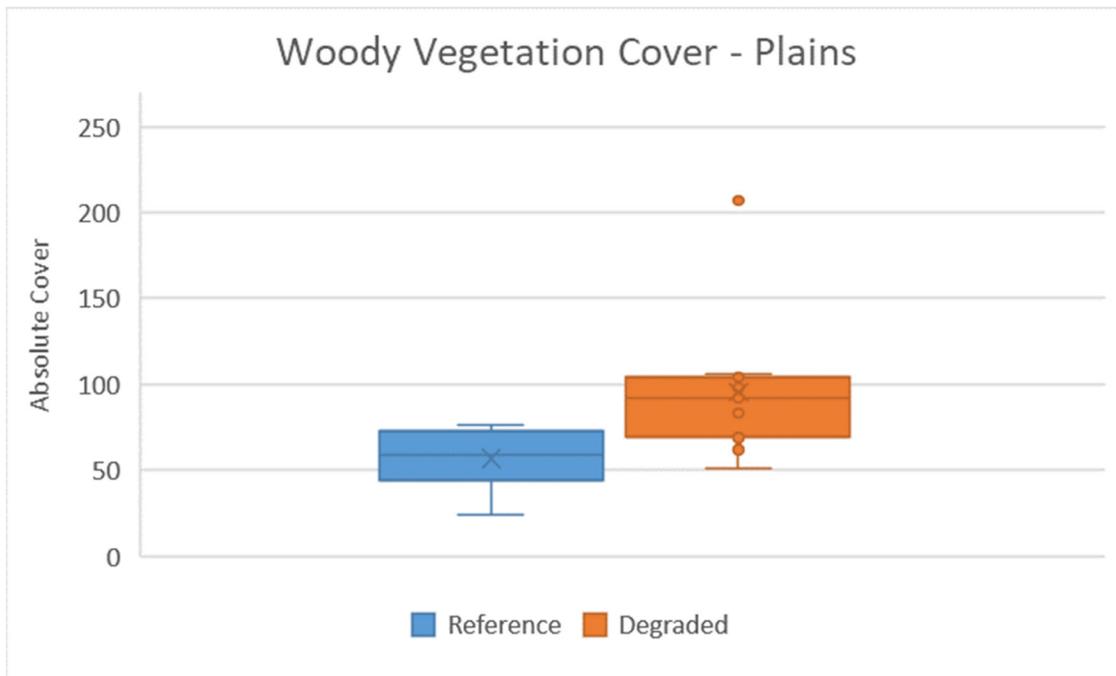


Figure 10-3: Box plots for Woody Vegetation Cover for the Plains ecoregion from the CNHP Dataset. Stratified by Condition (Reference or Degraded).

In the basin and plateau ecoregions (both included in the basin category), the CNHP cover values were substantially higher than the other ecoregions. Cover values may be higher because the data collection within the xeric ecoregions (basins) in Colorado followed a sampling

methodology using large plot sizes (e.g., 50m<sup>2</sup>- 500m<sup>2</sup>), potentially resulting in an overestimation of cover. Further, Macfarlane et al. (2017) modeled pre-European settlement native land cover and showed that current riparian vegetation showed significant to large (33 to >66%) departure from historic conditions in the Utah and Columbia River basin watersheds, with riparian vegetation conversions being primarily from native riparian to invasive and upland woody vegetation types. There may be few areas that truly represent reference standard condition on the landscape due to the long history of land use, flow modification, and grazing that is prevalent on the west slope of Colorado. Given these limitations, we decided to combine the mountains and basins datasets and develop a single, combined reference curve.

**WSTT data collection:** In August 2016 and fall of 2017, the WSTT visited several sites to apply the proposed WSQT methodology for assessing riparian vegetation. These sites were considered to represent minimally disturbed reference standard sites. However, because they are located on public lands, they have likely been subject to some historical use, including grazing and/or timber removal. The woody vegetation cover values from these sites are presented in Table 10-3. Note, these data reflect cover values by lifeform, and thus are lower than absolute cover value by species.

**Table 10-3: Woody Vegetation Cover at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT**

Site	Ecoregion	Woody Vegetation Cover (%)
Wood River, above Middle Fork	Mountains	53
Middle Fork Wood River	Mountains	47
Middle Fork Wood River - Upstream	Mountains	44
Jack Creek	Mountains	76
Sand Creek (2017)	Basins	46

**Analysis:** The following criteria were used to establish the thresholds between the three functional categories as a starting point:

- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile of reference standard sites were used to determine the maximum index value of 1.00.
- The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile values from reference standard sites were used to determine the threshold between functioning and a functioning-at-risk condition.
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile cover values from degraded sites were used to inform the threshold between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning. Where sufficient data were not available, this threshold could not be identified and values within these index ranges were determined from the interpolated reference curve.
- Minimum index values were set at 0% woody vegetation cover. Even a small amount of woody vegetation recruitment would lead to cover values of 1% or greater.

In the combined mountain and basins ecoregion dataset, the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile value (122% cover) was used to characterize the maximum index value (1.00), meaning any site with absolute woody vegetation cover of 122% or greater would receive a maximum index score. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile from this dataset (69% cover) and was used as the threshold value between functioning and functioning-at-risk index values.

We did not identify the break between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk due to a lack of data resolution. Instead, we decided to fit the reference curve, and allow this break to be extrapolated from the regression equation. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile value from the CNHP degraded sites was 46% woody vegetation cover, which falls within the functioning-at-risk range of index scores from the curve. While it may be appropriate to consider these degraded sites as not-functioning and assign them lower index values, due to the natural variability in woody riparian ecosystems we felt that a more conservative approach was appropriate.

After developing the reference curve, we evaluated data collected from montane and basins field sites in Wyoming, which showed a range of relative cover values from 44-76%. (Note that these cover values were collected with an earlier methodology from the WSQT Beta Version that yielded cover values by lifeform. Due to overlap of multiple species within each lifeform, cover value by lifeform tends to be lower than absolute cover by species values). These sites were in good condition, and had healthy, diverse riparian communities. However, cover values at these sites may be lower than a pristine condition due to historical and current anthropogenic use, including grazing and/or timber harvest. The sites in the Wood River basin were characterized by broad, connected floodplains that had microtopography consisting of multiple hummocks, swales, and cobble bars. These conditions support establishment of diverse herbaceous and scrub-shrub floodplain mosaics, which are an ecologically desirable outcome in many ecoregions, despite lower cover values (Kleindl et al. 2015). The woody vegetation was naturally patchy and interspersed with areas of herbaceous vegetation. In evaluating the datasets and proposed benchmarks, we concluded it was reasonable to characterize these sites as functioning or (high) functioning-at-risk. These sites have the potential to support aquatic ecosystem structure and function and were not in a clearly degraded state.

The combined CNHP dataset for the plains ecoregion had small sample sizes for both reference and degraded sites. In this dataset, degraded sites consistently had higher woody vegetation cover than reference sites. This could be due to several factors, including the augmentation of flows on the high plains from irrigation practices, or shifts in riparian community type (Richardson et al. 2007; Scott et al. 2000, Macfarlane et al. 2017). Historically, woody communities along streams in the plains would be characterized by cottonwood gallery forests and willows (West and Ruark 2004), and many are now composed of regionally introduced mixed deciduous forest species, shrubs that tolerate a broader range of environmental factors and land uses, and/or thick stands of non-native tamarisk (Kittel et al. 1999; Jones and Walford 1995). An evaluation of the NRSA dataset found that non-reference sites had, on average, lower cover values than reference sites, but some sites showed a similar pattern to the CNHP dataset, with much higher cover values than the reference sites. Because of these trends in the data, a two-sided reference curve is used to capture woody vegetation cover values that were both lower and higher than reference standard condition.

Due to the small size of the reference dataset, we decided to not define a threshold value between the functioning and functioning-at-risk categories, and instead fit a reference curve to a more limited set of threshold values. The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile values from the reference standard sites (69%, n=6) and the 25<sup>th</sup> percentile value for the degraded sites (76%, n=11) were used to define the maximum index value of 1.00. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile value for the degraded dataset is within 1% of the 95<sup>th</sup> percentile value of the reference sites. Because the CNHP degraded sites were consistently higher cover values than the reference sites, the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile from the degraded sites (101%, n=11) was used to determine the break between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning on the right side of the reference curve. On the left side of the reference curve, we did not identify the break between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk due to a lack of data resolution. Instead, we decided to fit the

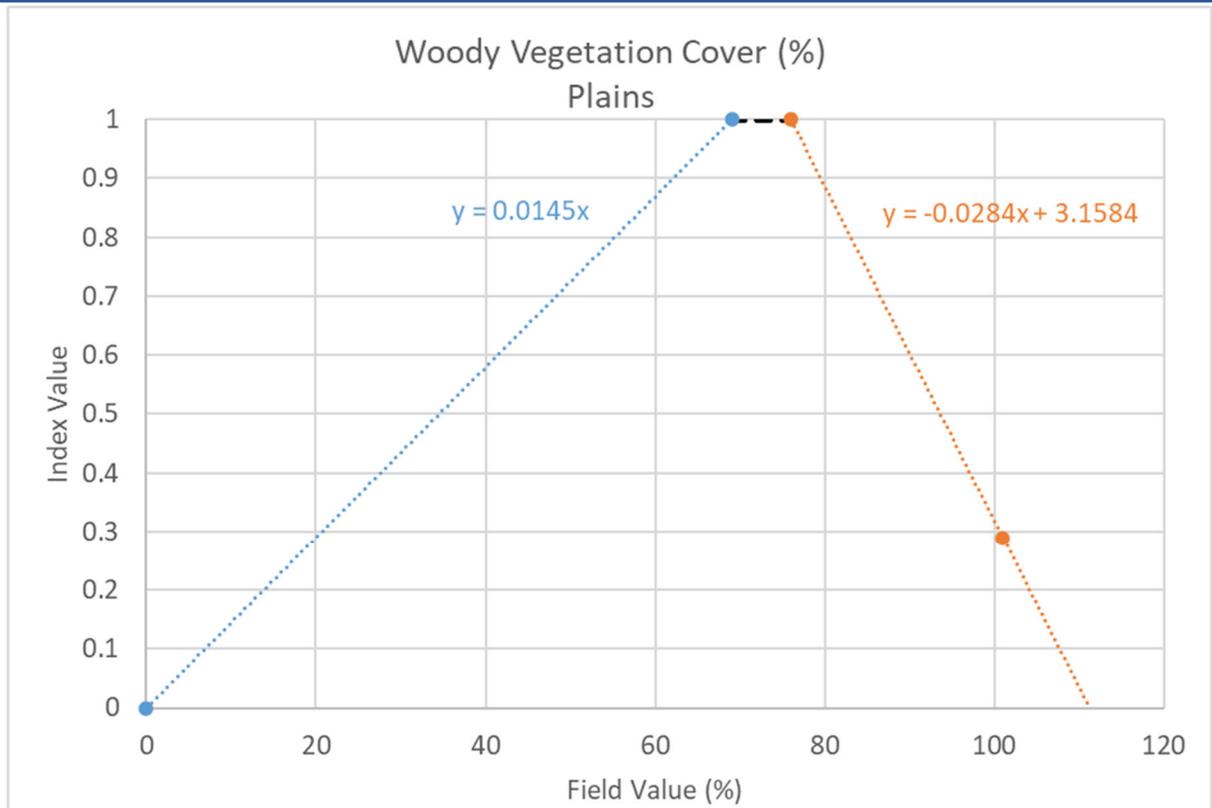
reference curve, and allow this break to be extrapolated from the regression equation. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile of the reference standard dataset was 53% cover, which falls within the functioning range of index values in the reference curve. Woody vegetation cover of 0% was assigned a minimum index value of 0.00, which allows for a range of woody cover values to score within the functioning-at-risk and functioning condition, recognizing ecosystem and flood dynamics that create diverse vegetation floodplain mosaics in a plains environment (Kleindl et al. 2015; Jones and Walford 1995).

**Table 10-4: Threshold Values for Woody Vegetation Cover**

Index Value	Field Value (%)	
	Mountains and Basins	Plains
1.00	≥ 122	69 – 75
0.70	69	-, -
0.29	-	-, 101
0.00	0	0, -



**Figure 10-4a: Woody Vegetation Cover Reference Curves**



**Figure 10-4b: Woody Vegetation Cover Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

The CNHP dataset includes data collected between 1992 and 1999, with no sites revisited recently. Additional analysis of these sites may be useful to understand whether changes in climate or other large-scale influences have altered the reference expectation for riparian areas in this region.

The reference curve development would benefit from additional field data to validate the criteria and curves identified above. Additional data would also allow for us to consider whether additional stratification or refinement beyond the three ecoregions could occur. For example, there was a broad range in cover values across reference standard conditions. As such, additional stratification within ecoregions, e.g., by valley type, slope, flow permanence stream size, or target community composition, would allow us to further refine these reference curves and identify more specific restoration targets.

This metric does not differentiate between upland and hydrophytic woody vegetation cover. This may attribute a higher level of functioning to degraded systems that have transitioned to an upland dominated woody community. Additional data and research are required to better understand how naturally prevalent upland species are within riparian areas in Colorado. Many plains and basin riparian systems support upland scrub-shrub communities. While these are often associated with more degraded, incised systems, they can also occur naturally due to specific soil conditions and in more arid areas with lower water tables.

A major challenge is also differentiating between streams of varying flow regimes. We did not differentiate or evaluate differences in woody riparian vegetation cover across perennial, intermittent, or ephemeral systems. It is likely ephemeral streams would naturally sustain lower

densities of woody vegetation, and thus would benefit from their own set of reference curves and criteria. We believe this metric should still be applied in ephemeral stream systems but would expect them to generally score lower than their perennial counterparts.

### **10.3 Herbaceous Vegetation Cover**

#### **Summary:**

While many riparian areas in Colorado are predominately characterized by a woody canopy (as noted above), herbaceous species are an important component of the riparian community, as they often provide surface roughness and cover in the early stages of succession following fluvial disturbances (Youngblood et al. 1985, Winward 2000). Hydrophytic herbaceous vegetation, including sedges and rushes, also contributes to bank stability and floodplain roughness (Winward 2000). Some riparian communities naturally support primarily herbaceous species, including those that support broad, highly connected floodplains with anaerobic soil conditions, or those that have natural disturbance (flood or fire) regimes that do not favor the persistence of woody species (Youngblood 1985; West and Ruark 2004) While the historical distribution of these communities is not well known, Kittel et al. (1999) describes over 30 riparian plant assemblages in Colorado that are predominantly herbaceous vegetation.

Many riparian areas in the western U.S. are heavily influenced by changes in land use, fire regimes, grazing, flow modification, and the influx of non-native and invasive species (Macfarlane et al. 2017). Many riparian communities contain non-native upland pasture grasses and forage forbs due to agricultural land use and cattle grazing. These species are adapted to a range of moisture regimes and thrive in mesic conditions supported by both connected and disconnected floodplains (Youngblood 1985). Introduced species are very competitive except in highly connected floodplains where anaerobic soil conditions generally support wetland obligate native species (USACE 2008b; USACE 2010). Over-grazing, frequent fire regimes, woody brush control, and channel incision can promote secondary succession and invasion of non-native herbaceous species as well as native upland grasses, which lack root structures that work to stabilize streams (Youngblood et al. 1985; Jones and Walford 1995; Winward 2000; MacFarlane et al. 2017). Riparian areas dominated by these species can perpetuate degraded conditions.

Herbaceous vegetation cover is included in the CSQT for sites with a reference expectation of less than 20% woody cover. Consideration was given to including both a herbaceous cover metric and a native/non-native herbaceous species metric, but due to the way scoring rolls up in the tool, it was decided to have separate metrics to account for herbaceous cover and for non-native cover. The herbaceous vegetation cover metric is based on a visual plot-based vegetation assessment. This metric represents the sum of absolute aerial cover of herbaceous species collected within 1-meter or 5-meter plots. NOTE: Methods are outlined in the User Manual.

#### **Reference Curve Development:**

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.***

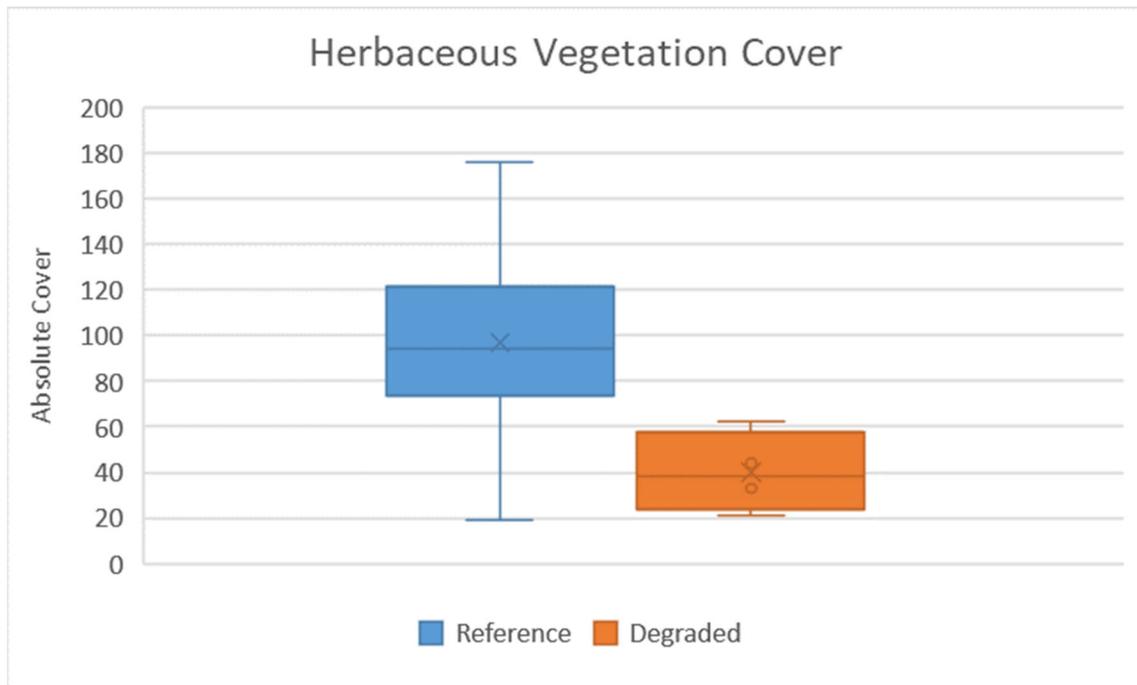
Data collection methods for this metric align with the 1987 Wetland Delineation Manual, as Corps field staff and many practitioners are already familiar with this form of data collection. These methods provide absolute cover by species. The reference curves were developed using the CNHP dataset, the Northern Rocky Mountain Hydrogeomorphic Manual (Hauer et al. 2002), and a small data collection effort in Wyoming.

Colorado Natural Heritage Program: Herbaceous vegetation cover values were calculated for sites in the CNHP dataset, described in Section 1.8. Sites were stratified as either woody or herbaceous depending on whether they had greater than or less than 20% woody cover, respectively. For woody sites, there were no significant differences in herbaceous vegetation cover between reference and degraded sites. As such, this metric is only applicable at herbaceous sites where the reference expectation is <20% woody cover. Herbaceous vegetation cover values were developed by summing absolute cover values categorized by stratum. Species in the dataset identified as graminoid or forb were grouped together into the herbaceous stratum.

Multiple options were evaluated for stratification, including by ecoregion, valley entrenchment, and CDPHE biotype. Results did not yield any statistically significant differences between reference and degraded sites with these stratifications. There were, however, statistically significant differences between reference and degraded sites when looking at all data combined. As such, the dataset was not stratified beyond reference community type (e.g., woody or herbaceous dominated). Statistics were derived from the CNHP dataset for the reference (R) and degraded (D) sites for herbaceous sites (Table 10-5) and box plots are depicted in Figure 10-5.

**Table 10-5: Statistics for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset**

	Herbaceous Vegetation Cover (%) by Condition	
	Degraded	Reference
Number of Sites (n)	4	94
95 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	78	152
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	60	120
Median	47	94
Mean	52	95
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	39	73
5 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	33	36



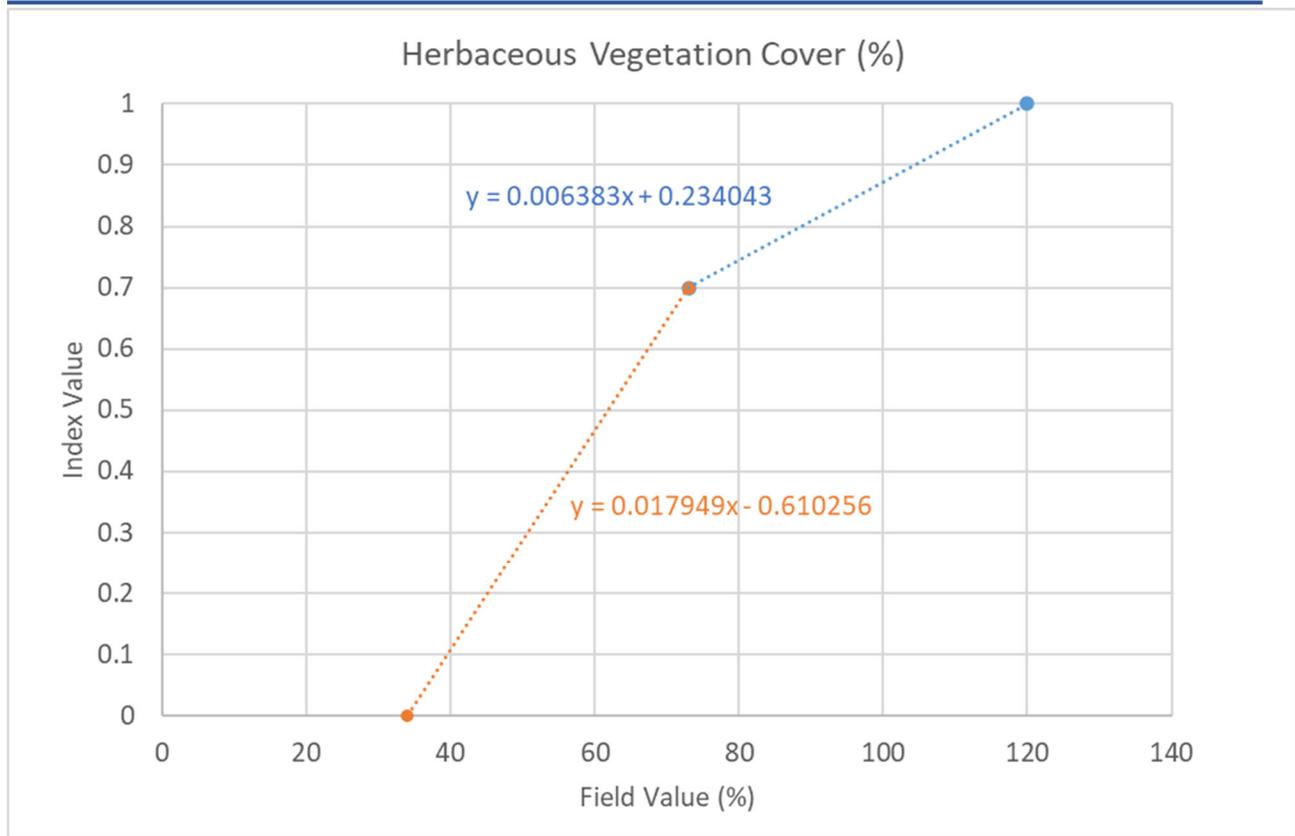
**Figure 10-5:** *Box Plots for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover from the CNHP Dataset. Stratified by Condition (Reference or Degraded).*

**Analysis:** Best professional judgement was used to interpret the datasets to develop threshold values for this metric (Table 10-6). The following criteria were used to establish the breaks between functional categories:

- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile of reference standard sites (120%, n=94) was used to determine the maximum index value of 1.00.
- The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile of reference standard sites (73%, n=94) was used to determine the break between functioning and the functioning-at-risk condition.
- Due to small sample sizes, the threshold between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning was not identified a priori and values within these index ranges could be determined from the interpolated reference curve.
- The minimum index value was derived from the 5<sup>th</sup> percentile of all reference and degraded sites combined (34%, n=101) due to small sample size for degraded sites.

**Table 10-6:** *Threshold Values for Herbaceous Vegetation Cover*

Index Value	Field Value (%)
	Herbaceous Vegetation Cover
1.00	≥ 120
0.70	73
0.00	34



**Figure 10-6: Herbaceous Vegetation Cover Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

The CNHP dataset includes data collected between 1992 and 1999; with no sites revisited recently. Additional analysis of these sites may be useful to understand whether changes in climate or other large-scale influences have altered the reference expectation for riparian areas in this region.

The reference curve development would benefit from additional field data to validate the criteria and curves identified above. We are uncertain of the prevalence of naturally occurring herbaceous-only riparian reference communities due to historically altered landscapes, current land uses, and altered flow regimes (Jones and Walford 1995; West and Ruark 2004; Macfarlane et al. 2017). The only certain reference herbaceous communities are those that support broad, highly connected floodplains with anaerobic soil conditions; or those that have natural disturbance (flood or fire) regimes that do not favor the persistence of woody species (Youngblood 1985; West and Ruark 2004). Additional data would also allow for us to consider whether additional stratification or refinement beyond reference community type could occur. This would allow us to consider natural variability in herbaceous cover that occurs across stream sizes, elevations, soil types or between different target herbaceous community compositions.

We did not differentiate or evaluate differences in herbaceous riparian vegetation cover across perennial, intermittent, or ephemeral systems, and are uncertain if this metric plays a substantial role in differentiating between streams of varying flow regime. We believe this metric should still be applied in ephemeral stream systems but would expect they may have greater natural

variability in what is considered reference standard condition and/or may score lower than their perennial counterparts.

#### **10.4 Percent Native Cover**

##### Summary:

Many riparian areas in the western U.S. are heavily influenced by changes in land use, fire regimes, grazing, flow modification, and the influx of non-native and invasive species (Macfarlane et al. 2017). For example, Tamarisk and Russian olive have been prolific invaders, and many restoration efforts target the management and eradication of these invasive species (Shafroth et al. 2002). Many riparian areas in the plains and basins that historically (pre-European settlement) contained patches of timber or brush were eventually and progressively reduced to mixed origin herbaceous communities due to the migration of white pioneers, the advance of farming and stock-raising, and the introduction of non-native pasture grasses (West and Ruark 2004).

This metric represents relative cover of native species and is calculated by absolute cover of native species divided by absolute cover of all species at a site. The maximum field value for this metric is 100% cover.

##### Reference Curve Development:

***Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in Colorado.***

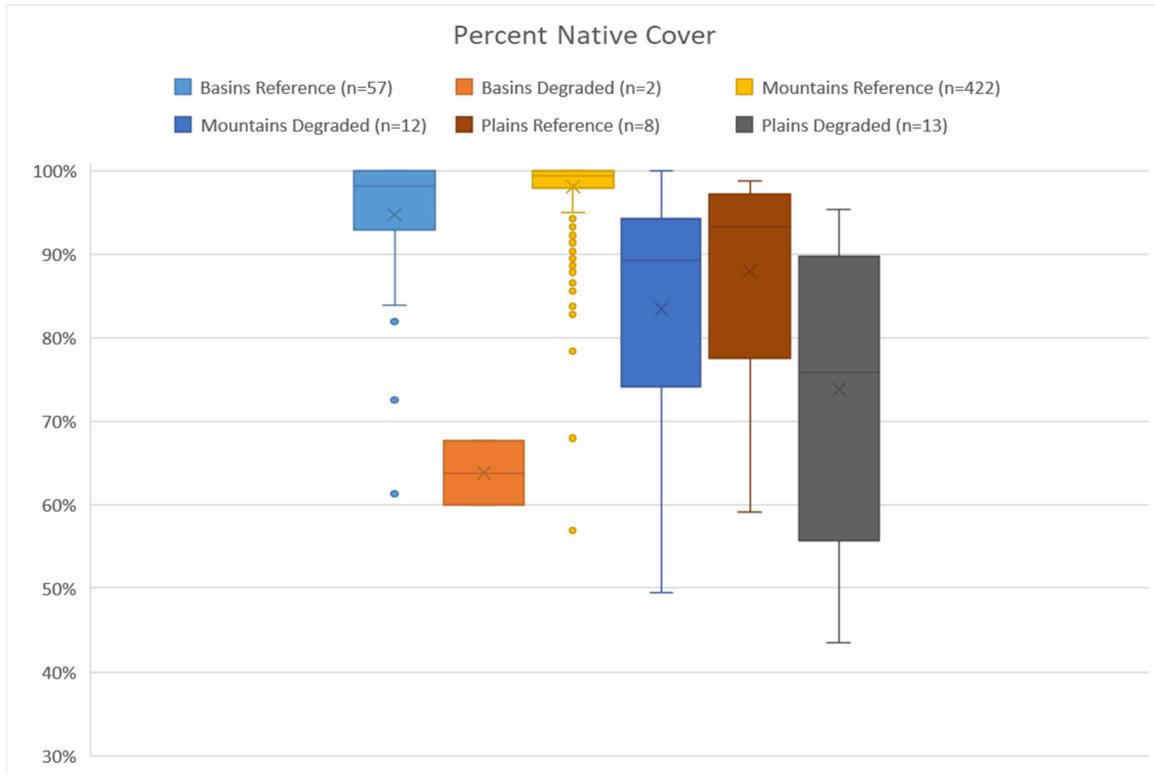
The data collection methods for this metric align with the 1987 Wetland Delineation Manual methods, as Corps field staff and many practitioners are already familiar with this form of data collection. These methods provide absolute cover by species. The reference curves were developed using the CNHP dataset and a small data collection effort in Wyoming.

Colorado Natural Heritage Program: Percent native cover values were calculated from sites in the CNHP dataset, described in Section 1.8. Percent native cover was calculated by summing the absolute cover values for all native species and dividing by the total absolute cover value for a site. Statistics were derived from the CNHP dataset for the reference standard and degraded sites (Table 10-7). Sample sizes were limited, particularly for degraded sites and for all sites within the plains and tablelands (included in the plains category) ecoregions.

**Table 10-7: Statistics for Percent Native Cover from the CNHP Dataset**

Statistic	Percent Native Vegetation Cover (%)	
	Degraded	Reference
Number of Sites (n)	27	487
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	91	100
Median	84	99
Mean	77	98
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	65	98
5 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	48	89

Percent native cover was consistent across reference standard sites within all ecoregions and reference community types (Figure 10-7), with one exception. In the plains ecoregion at woody reference community types, percent native cover values were lower at both reference and degraded sites, as compared with other ecoregions. This could be reflective of land use, flow modification, and grazing at the sites included in the dataset. Due to the small sample sizes of this subset, and the consistency across other ecoregions and community types, this metric is not stratified by ecoregion or reference community type.



**Figure 10-7: Box Plots for Percent Native Cover from the CNHP Dataset. Stratified by Condition (Reference or Degraded) and Ecoregion (Basins, Mountains and Plains)**

**WSTT data collection:** In August 2016 and fall of 2017, the WSTT visited several sites to apply the proposed WSQT methodology for assessing riparian vegetation. These sites were considered to represent minimally disturbed reference standard sites. However, because they are located on public lands, they have likely been subject to some historical use, including grazing and/or timber removal. The percent native cover values from these sites are presented in Table 10-8.

**Table 10-8: Percent Native Cover at Reference Sites Visited by the WSTT**

Site	Ecoregion	Percent Native Cover (%)
Wood River, above Middle Fork	Mountains	92
Middle Fork Wood River	Mountains	98
Middle Fork Wood River - Upstream	Mountains	100
Jack Creek	Mountains	100

**Analysis:** The following criteria were used to establish the threshold values using the CNHP dataset. Threshold values are shown in Table 10-9.

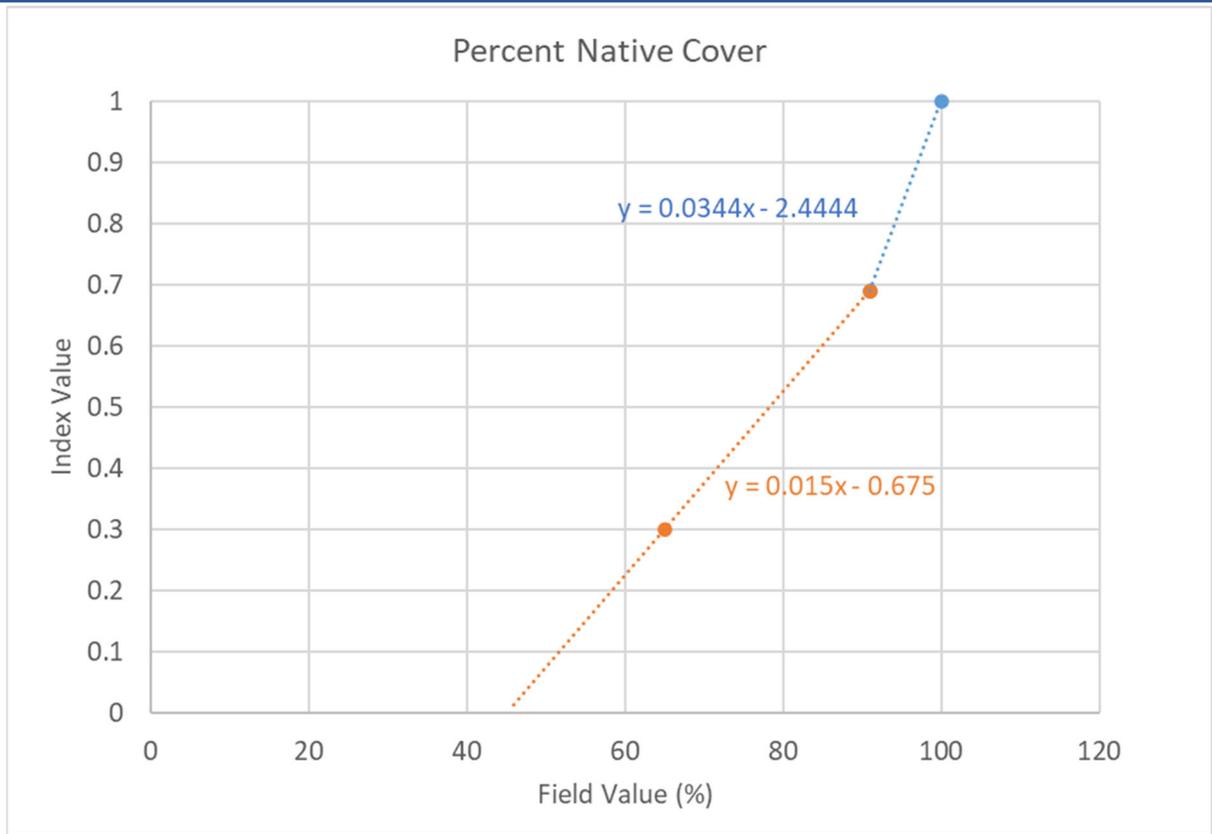
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile of reference standard sites was used to determine the maximum index value of 1.00.
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile values from degraded sites were used to determine the threshold between the functioning and a functioning-at-risk condition. Since threshold values are from the degraded sites, the field value of 91% native cover was used to define the upper end of the functioning-at-risk range of scoring.
- The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile cover values from degraded sites were used to inform the threshold between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning condition.
- Minimum index values were extrapolated from the regression equation.

A broken linear curve was used to fit the threshold values. The minimum index value extrapolated from the curve was 46% native cover, which aligns with the 5<sup>th</sup> percentile from the degraded dataset (48%) and is thus a reasonable minimum value.

Data collected in Wyoming had percent native cover values of 92-100%, which would all fall within the functioning, reference standard range of index scores. As noted above, these sites were in good condition, and had healthy, diverse riparian communities, and it was considered reasonable to characterize these sites as functioning or (high) functioning-at-risk.

**Table 10-9: Threshold Values for Percent Native Cover**

Index value	Field Value
1.00	100
0.69	91
0.30	65



**Figure 10-8: Percent Native Cover Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

The reference curve development for the CSQT would benefit from additional field data to validate the criteria and curves identified above. Additional data would also allow for us to consider whether stratification is needed.

This metric does not differentiate between upland and hydrophytic native vegetation cover, and as such, may attribute a higher level of functioning to degraded systems that have transitioned to an upland-dominated community. Additional data and research are required to better understand how naturally prevalent upland species are within riparian areas in Colorado. Many plains and basin riparian systems support upland scrub-shrub communities. While these are often associated with more degraded, incised systems, they can also occur naturally due to specific soil conditions and in more arid areas with lower water tables.

A major challenge is also differentiating between streams of varying flow regime. We did not differentiate or evaluate differences in native cover across perennial, intermittent, or ephemeral systems, or evaluate whether changes in flow regime may facilitate the establishment of non-native species. We believe this metric should be applied in ephemeral stream systems but would benefit from additional data collection.

## Chapter 11. Temperature Parameter

Functional Category: Physicochemical

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Temperature plays a key role in both physicochemical and biological functions. For example, each species of fish has an optimal growth temperature, but can survive a wider range of thermal conditions. Stream temperatures outside of a species' optimal thermal range result in reduced growth and reproduction and ultimately in individual mortality and population extirpation (Cherry et al. 1977). Water temperature also influences conductivity, dissolved oxygen concentration, rates of aqueous chemical reactions, and toxicity of some pollutants. These factors impact water quality and the ability of living organisms to survive in the stream.

Temperature assessments commonly focus on mean and maximum water temperatures, with maximum water temperatures commonly used to inform numeric water quality standards. While comparisons of site condition can be made to numeric standards (e.g., maximum temperature thresholds for aquatic biota), the use of regional reference data can provide a better indication of the degree of degradation and restoration potential than a comparison to temperature standards alone (Roni and Beechie 2013). Emerging monitoring and modeling capabilities are advancing the science on stream temperature, allowing for greater understanding of the temporal and spatial variability of temperature regimes in streams, and expanding the potential range of temperature variables that could inform condition (Steele and Fullerton 2017).

The metrics included in the CSQT are the summer maximum weekly average temperature (MWAT) and daily maximum (DM) temperature. A winter MWAT was also considered for inclusion in the CSQT, recognizing its potential role in protecting over-winter egg incubation and ovary development of spring spawners, and may be included in future versions of the tool.

Metrics:

- Daily Maximum Temperature (°C)
- Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (MWAT) (°C)

### **11.1 Daily Maximum Temperature**

Summary:

As defined by state regulation 31 (5 CCR 1002-31) the daily maximum (DM) temperature is the highest two-hour average water temperature recorded during a given 24-hour period. The daily maximum temperature is determined based on monitoring throughout the summer months of July and August with a maximum sampling interval of 30-minutes. The metric is measured using in-water temperature sensors installed following procedures outlined in the USEPA's 'Best Practices for Continuous Monitoring of Temperature and Flow in Wadeable Streams' (USEPA 2014) or USFS's 'Measuring Stream Temperature with Digital Data Loggers: A User's Field Guide' (Dunham et al. 2005).

The DM is the acute temperature criterion for waterbodies in Colorado implemented to help prevent temperature changes that are deleterious to resident aquatic life. Temperatures that exceed this threshold may be lethal to aquatic species (CDPHE 2011).

**Reference Curve Development:**

The threshold values for the DM metric is based on the acute temperature criterion defined in state regulation 31 (5 CCR 1002-31) which is derived from laboratory experiments determining lethal temperatures for fish acclimated to average summer temperatures. The DM temperature standards are provided in Table 11-1, stratified by regulatory temperature tiers. Temperature tiers are first identified as cold stream (CS) or warm stream (WS) then numbered by increasing temperature. There are two CS-I tiers, with more protective standards set for streams where mountain whitefish (MWF) spawn.

**Table 11-1: DM Standards for Colorado Streams**

Temperature Tier Code	MWAT (°C)
CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	21.2
CS-I	21.7
CS-II	23.9
WS-I	29.0
WS-II	28.6
WS-III	31.8

The index value for DM is binary and defined using the DM temperature standards shown in Table 11-1. DM temperatures that exceed the acute criteria are considered not-functioning and score a 0.00 in the CSQT while DM temperatures that are less than the acute criteria score a 1.00. As long as temperatures do not exceed the DM, average temperatures are better at detecting thermal impacts to fish, which is captured by the other temperature metric in the CSQT, the MWAT (Imholt et al. 2011). No reference curve was developed since the scoring is binary.

**Table 11-2: Threshold Values for DM**

Index Value	Field Values (°C) by Temperature Tier Code					
	CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	CS-I	CS-II	WS-I	WS-II	WS-III
1.00	< 21.2	< 21.7	< 23.9	< 29.0	< 28.6	< 31.8
0.00	≥ 21.2	≥ 21.7	≥ 23.9	≥ 29.0	≥ 28.6	≥ 31.8

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

The DM metric relies on the user to select an appropriate temperature tier. All streams in Colorado have assigned temperature tiers (see Regulations 32 – 38) but the assigned tier may not be appropriate for a particular project reach. In selecting the appropriate temperature tier, users should also consider the most thermally-sensitive species expected to occupy the reach in summer once restoration is complete.

## **11.2 Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (MWAT)**

### Summary:

As defined by state regulation 31 (5 CCR 1002-31) the Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (MWAT) is the highest weekly average temperature in the period of interest. The temperature is monitored throughout the summer months of July and August and the weekly average temperature is the average of daily average temperatures over a seven-day consecutive period.<sup>3</sup> This metric is measured using in-water temperature sensors installed following procedures outlined in the USEPA's 'Best Practices for Continuous Monitoring of Temperature and Flow in Wadeable Streams' (USEPA 2014) or USFS's 'Measuring Stream Temperature with Digital Data Loggers: A User's Field Guide' (Dunham et al. 2005).

The MWAT is the chronic temperature criterion for waterbodies in Colorado implemented to help prevent temperature changes that are deleterious to resident aquatic life. The MWAT represents the upper bound of the optimum temperature range that supports specific species growth, reproduction, and survival (Brungs et al. 1977). Temperatures that exceed this threshold may limit growth, reproduction, and survival.

### Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves were derived from the chronic temperature criterion defined in state regulation 31 (5 CCR 1002-31) and the optimum temperatures for growth and swim speed of representative species within each temperature tier. The MWAT temperature standards for the summer season are provided in Table 11-3, stratified by the regulatory temperature tiers. Temperature tiers are first identified as cold stream (CS) or warm stream (WS) then numbered by increasing temperature (ex. CS-II). There are two CS-I tiers, with more protective standards set for streams where mountain whitefish (MWF) spawn.

---

<sup>3</sup> The sampling interval for the MWAT requires a minimum of three data points spaced equally through each day but the sampling interval for the daily maximum temperature metric is 30-minutes.

**Table 11-3: MWAT Standards for Colorado Streams**

Temperature Tier Code	MWAT (°C)
CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	16.9
CS-I	17.0
CS-II	18.3
WS-I	24.2
WS-II	27.5
WS-III	28.7

The optimum temperatures for growth and swim speed were determined by CPW for representative species within each temperature tier. Species with similar thermal requirements are grouped into tiers shown in Table 11-4. The optimum temperatures were selected as either the median value for the target species of the tier or the lowest temperature for a sensitive species was selected to ensure protection. The optimum temperatures for each temperature tier are shown in Table 11-5.

**Table 11-4: Representative Species within each Temperature Tier. The representative species used to determine the optimum temperature for the tier are bolded.**

Tier	Species Expected to be Present
CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	<b>Mountain whitefish</b> early life stages (applied to spawning grounds only)
CS-I	Brook trout and <b>cutthroat trout</b>
CS-II	<b>Brown trout, rainbow trout</b> , mottled sculpin, mountain whitefish, and longnose sucker
WS-I	<b>Common shiner, johnny darter, orangethroat darter</b> , and stonecat
WS-II	Brook stickleback, central stoneroller, creek chub, longnose dace, northern redbelly dace, finescale dace, <b>razorback sucker</b> , white sucker, and mountain sucker.
WS-III	Other Warmwater Species (Arkansas darter, bigmouth shiner, black bullhead, bluegill, bluehead sucker, <b>bonytail</b> , brassy minnow, brown bullhead, channel catfish, Colorado pikeminnow, common carp, fathead minnow, flannelmouth sucker, flathead catfish, freshwater drum, green sunfish, honeyhead chub, Iowa darter, plains killifish, plains minnow, plains topminnow, orangespotted sunfish, pumpkinseed sunfish, quillback, red shiner, Rio Grande chub, Rio Grande sucker, river carpsucker, roundtail chub, sand shiner, smallmouth bass, smallmouth buffalo, southern redbelly dace, speckled dace, spotail shiner, western mosquitofish, yellow bullhead)

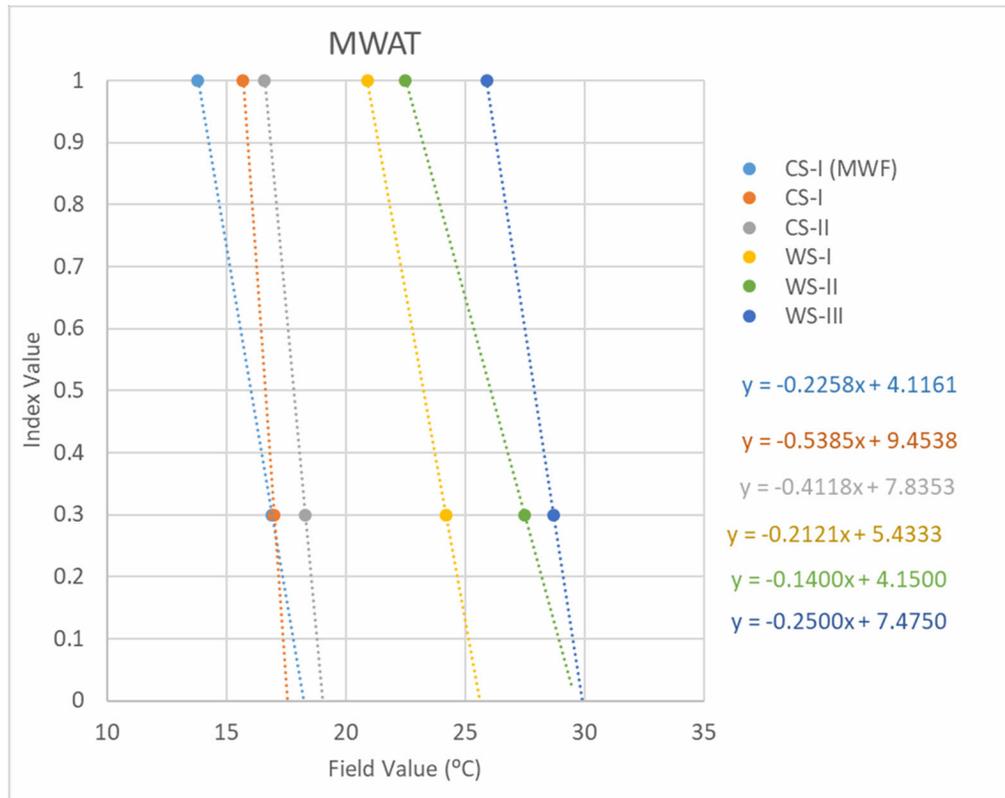
**Table 11-5: Optimum temperature based on species within each temperature tier for Colorado streams**

Temperature Tier Code	Optimum Temperature (°C)
CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	13.8
CS-I	15.7
CS-II	16.6
WS-I	20.9
WS-II	22.5
WS-III	25.9

The maximum index value (1.00) for each temperature tier was defined using the optimum temperatures shown in Table 12-5. The MWAT chronic temperature standards from state regulation 31 (5 CCR 1002-31) shown in Table 11-3 were used to define the 0.30 threshold for each temperature tier, as they represent the state’s threshold for impairment. Linear curves were fit to the values in Table 11-6. The reference curves used in the CSQT to calculate index values are shown in Figure 11-1.

**Table 11-6: Threshold Values for MWAT**

Index Value	Field Values (°C) by Temperature Tier Code					
	CS-I <sub>MWF</sub>	CS-I	CS-II	WS-I	WS-II	WS-III
1.00	13.8	15.7	16.6	20.9	22.5	25.9
0.30	16.9	17.0	18.3	24.2	27.5	28.7



**Figure 11-1: Maximum Weekly Average Temperature (°C) Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

The MWAT metric relies on the user to select an appropriate temperature tier. All streams in Colorado have assigned temperature tiers (see Regulations 32 – 38) but the assigned tier may not be appropriate for a project reach. In selecting the appropriate temperature tier, users should also consider the most thermally-sensitive species expected to occupy the reach in summer once restoration is complete.

This metric considers colder summer MWATs to represent reference standard condition for all thermal tiers. Some human activities, such as flow augmentation or hypolimnetic reservoir releases, may cause a stream to be colder than the natural condition. This metric does not capture the potential for reduced functional capacity due to these changes.

## Chapter 12. Dissolved Oxygen Parameter

Functional Category: Physicochemical

Parameter Summary:

Dissolved oxygen plays a key role in biological functioning and freshwater aquatic life requires adequate amounts of dissolved oxygen (DO) to survive. The amount of DO in a stream affects biological respiration rates and the solubility of chemical constituents such as inorganic nutrients (Harman et al. 2012).

Including this parameter in the CSQT incentivizes in-stream structures and channel geometry that improves oxygenation where DO may be limiting biological and physicochemical function. DO can be improved through stream restoration practices that create eddies and induce mixing such as drop structures, habitat boulders, constructed riffles, and large woody debris. Permitted impacts that remove these types of features are likely to result in functional loss.

The SFPF (Harman et al. 2012) describes two measurement methods for DO: concentration and percent saturation. The CSQT SC considered including both but ultimately the reference standards for DO concentration were more directly linked to biological functioning than percent saturation, which varies considerably with temperature and elevation (USEPA 1986). Percent saturation was also considered indicative of nutrient cycling which is assessed in a separate parameter within the CSQT.

Metric:

- Dissolved Oxygen Concentration

### **12.1 Dissolved Oxygen Concentration**

Summary:

This metric is a direct measure of the concentration of dissolved oxygen (mg/L) in the project reach collected according to procedures outlined in WDEQ/WQD (2017).<sup>4</sup> DO sampling for use in the CSQT requires that a DO logger be deployed for at least one week during the summer months of July or August and record daily measurements between one and three in the afternoon.

Reference Curve Development:

Dissolved oxygen concentrations were obtained from the WQCD dataset, described in Section 1.8. In order to maintain consistency with the sampling methodology for the CSQT SC, only sampling events that occurred in summer months (June to September) and after noon on the sampling day were included in the analysis. Values within the dataset that were less than 0 mg/L or greater than 16 mg/L were removed from the analysis. Sites within the dataset were

---

<sup>4</sup> The CSQT SC reviewed the WDEQ/WQD methods and compared them to the CO SOPs (CDPHE 2016) and found the Wyoming methods were comparable and provided more detail.

stratified based on whether they were cold stream (CS) or warm stream (WS) temperature habitats (refer to regulatory temperature tiers identified in Chapter 12). Sites that were not identified as CS or WS were also removed from the analysis.

Sites within the dataset were identified as reference, other, or stressed (Table 12-1) based on an assessment of the upstream watershed using GIS and aerial imagery (CDPHE 2017). Impacts considered in the analysis included land use, point sources, water diversion, road density, abandoned mines, oil and gas facilities, and concentrated animal feeding operations. For sites that were not identified as stressed, the data show that the CS had higher DO values than the WS, as expected. However, the stressed sites demonstrate higher DO values than the rest of the sites and the WS stressed sites have the highest 75<sup>th</sup> percentile and the second highest average. The observed trends are likely a result of stressed sites with excessive algae that leads to high DO during the day and very low DO at night. The 25<sup>th</sup> percentile values follow the expected trend of higher DO in the sites identified as reference.

**Table 12-1: Statistics for Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) from WQCD Dataset by Stream Condition**

Statistic	Cold Stream (CS)			Warm Stream (WS)		
	Reference	Other	Stressed	Reference	Other	Stressed
Count (n)	70	511	43	17	134	29
Average	8.4	8.2	8.7	8.1	8.0	8.6
Standard Deviation	1.1	1.3	1.9	1.4	1.6	1.8
Minimum	6.8	1.8	6.3	6.1	3.1	5.5
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	7.8	7.5	7.5	7.3	7.1	7.1
Median	8.3	8.0	8.3	7.9	7.7	8.2
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	8.8	8.7	9.3	8.5	8.8	10.2
Maximum	13.1	14.4	15.4	11.4	13.0	13.0

The dissolved oxygen concentrations from the WQCD were compared to the 1986 USEPA report on dissolved oxygen concentrations that support aquatic life, summarized in Table 12-2.

**Table 12-2: Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) that Support Aquatic Life (USEPA 1986)**

Description	Salmonids		Non-Salmonids		Invertebrates
	Embryo and Larval Stages	Other Life Stages	Early Life Stages	Other Life Stages	
No production impairment	11	8	6.5	6	8
Slight production impairment	9	6	5.5	5	-
Moderate production impairment	8	5	5	4	-
Severe production impairment	7	4	4.5	3.5	-
Limit to avoid acute mortality	6	3	4	3	4

Even though salmonids are not species expected to be present in WS, the water quality criteria in Table 12-2 shows that the salmonid criteria are attainable in WS streams and the CSQT SC decided not to stratify the reference standards by stream temperature class (Table 12-3). The following criteria were used to set reference standards for DO concentration in the CSQT:

- A DO concentration of 6 mg/L would be the minimum to avoid acute mortality of salmonid embryos and larvae and is likely to result in a slight production impairment for salmonids during other life stages. Therefore, 6 mg/L was set as the minimum index value (0.00). The data in Table 12-1 shows that all of the reference quality WS and stressed CS meet this criterion.
- A DO concentration of 9 mg/L was determined reasonable as the break between functioning-at-risk and functioning (index value of 0.70) since it would be protective of adult salmonids while providing protection for salmonid embryos and larvae. Additionally, this value was consistent with the 75th percentile for all sites in the WQCD dataset (Table 12-3).
- The CSQT SC considered a bell shaped curve and the declining function associated with high DO concentrations, but due to the difficulty in assigning a value at which function is lost based on the WQCD and the criteria laid out in Table 12-2, it was not incorporated into the CSQT. High DO is indicative of excessive algae which is measured by the nutrients parameter and further research is needed to determine threshold values for the ‘falling limb’ of a reference curve.

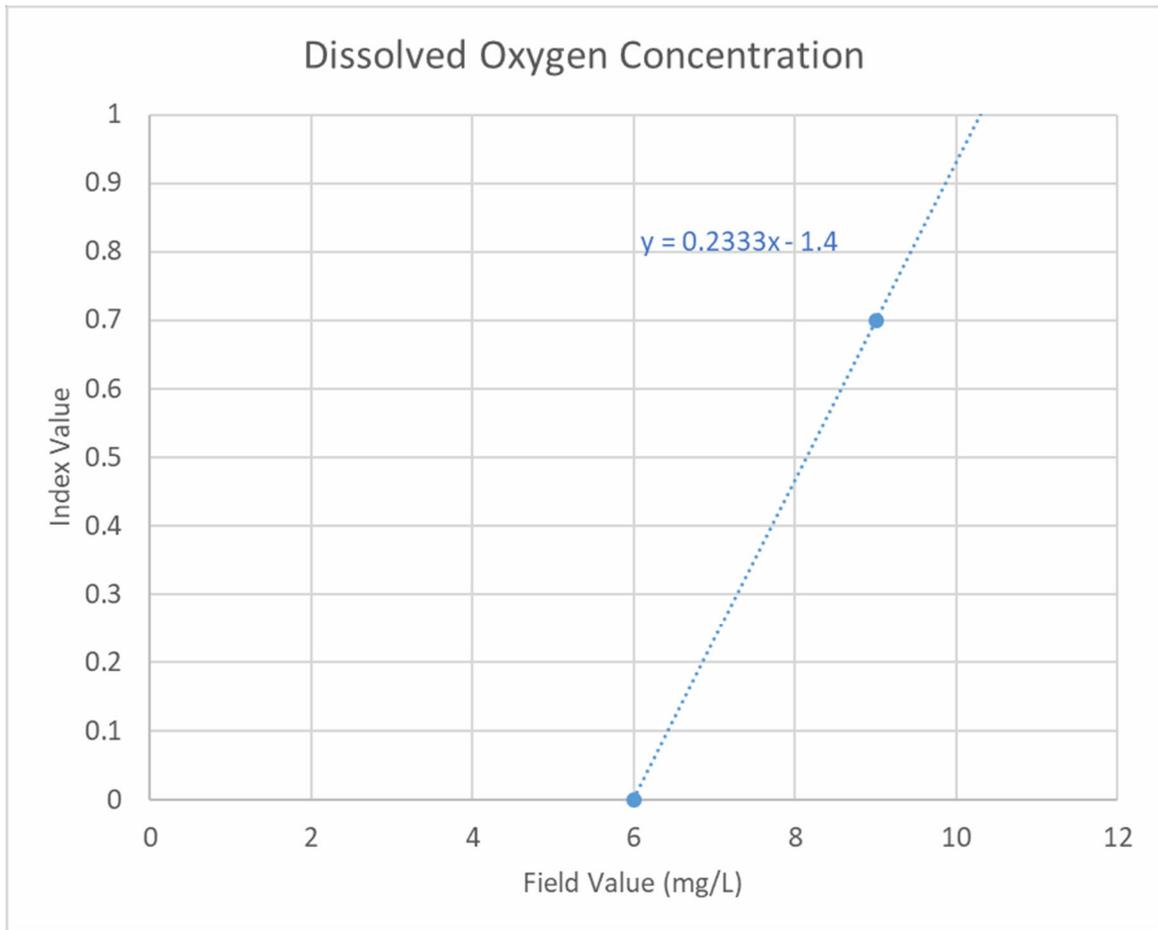
**Table 12-3: Statistics for Dissolved Oxygen Concentrations (mg/L) from WQCD Dataset**

Statistic	CS	WS	All Sites
Count (n)	624	180	804
Average	8.3	8.1	8.2
Standard Deviation	1.3	1.6	1.4
Minimum	1.8	3.1	1.8
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	7.5	7.1	7.4
Median	8.1	7.8	8.0
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	8.8	9.2	8.8
Maximum	15.4	13.0	15.4

**Table 12-4: Threshold Values (mg/L) for Dissolved Oxygen Concentration**

Index Value	Field Value
0.70	9.0
0.00	6.0

These reference standards result in a DO concentration of 7.3 mg/L as the break between functioning-at-risk and not-functioning, which aligns with a moderate to severe production impairment in salmonids.



**Figure 12-1: Dissolved Oxygen Concentration Reference Curve**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

Annual monitoring of DO may not be sufficient to show functional lift or loss. While continuous meters are available to track DO throughout a monitoring period, they are expensive.

Dissolved oxygen has diel fluctuations as primary producers generate oxygen during the day through photosynthesis and consume oxygen at night through respiration. Dissolved oxygen is generally lowest just before sunrise. Measuring dissolved oxygen in the afternoon does not capture the time period when dissolved oxygen is most likely to be at its lowest point, and therefore most stressful for fish and invertebrates. Since monitoring at night is impractical, measurements in the late afternoon will capture the diel fluctuation of water temperature and therefore a local minimum in the diel fluctuation of DO.

## Chapter 13. Nutrients Parameter

Functional Category: Physicochemical

Parameter Summary:

Nutrients in stream ecosystems are, by definition, necessary for growth and survival of aquatic species. Of the nutrients in stream ecosystems, nitrogen and phosphorus are the most important (Allan and Castillo 2007). Excessive nutrients from nonpoint source pollution, particularly runoff from agricultural lands, is one of the leading causes of impairment to streams in the United States (USEPA 2005). While there is a minimum amount of nutrients necessary to support aquatic life, nutrient concentrations often greatly exceed optimum values which can lead to excess algae growth and result in degraded aquatic habitat and physicochemical conditions, altered fish and invertebrate communities, occasional fish kills, and aesthetic degradation.

Several nutrient-related metrics were considered including total nitrogen (TN), total phosphorus (TP), nitrate-nitrite, ammonia, ash free dry mass (AFDM), chlorophyll  $\alpha$ , and cell counts with biovolume. Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  is the predominant type of chlorophyll found in green plants and algae and concentrations are directly affected by the amount of nitrogen and phosphorus in the stream (Dodds and Smith 2016). This metric is preferred to direct sampling of nitrogen and/or phosphorus since water column nitrogen and phosphorus concentrations can be misleading when these nutrients are largely assimilated by excess algae and plant growth. This metric is preferred over AFDM which is unable to distinguish algal biomass from other periphyton components like dead algae, fungi, bacteria, protists, and detritus (Steinman et al. 2017). Cell count with biovolume is the most direct measurement of algal biomass but was not selected for use in the CSQT due to a lack of data to develop reference standards.

Metric:

- Chlorophyll  $\alpha$

### **13.1 Chlorophyll $\alpha$**

Summary:

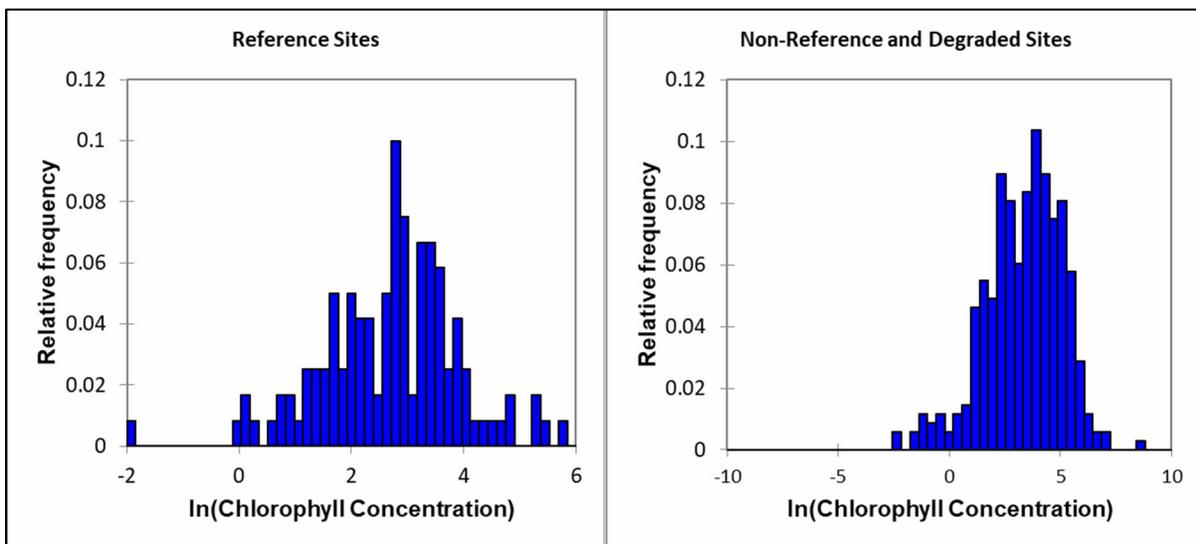
This metric is a direct measure of the concentration of chlorophyll  $\alpha$  ( $\text{mg}/\text{m}^2$ ) collected according to procedures outlined in CDPHE (2015). Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  is the pigment that allows plants (including algae) to use sunlight to convert simple molecules into organic compounds via the process of photosynthesis and is used in the CSQT as a surrogate for nitrogen and phosphorus. Sampling should target maximum periphyton biomass, which occurs in summer; avoid sampling after high flows have scoured periphyton.

Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in CO. The analysis performed for the WSQT v1.0 to develop reference curves is presented first, followed by the WQCD dataset results from CO.

*WSQT v1.0 (USACE 2018b)*: The WDEQ Water Quality Division provided chlorophyll datasets to develop reference curves for the WSQT. This dataset consisted of 467 samples that were collected between July 2007 and October 2015 and classified sites as Reference, Non-Reference, or Degraded using the procedure described by Hargett (2011). For this dataset, reference standard sites are considered to approximate best attainable, and not necessarily pristine, conditions for the ecoregion based on presence/absence of anthropogenic stressors in the watershed and reach. Many sites that are identified as degraded were classified as such due to watershed or reach-scale factors that may be unrelated to nutrients. The data were split into two datasets for the subsequent analysis: sites identified as reference standard (n = 120) and sites identified as non-reference or degraded (n = 347).

A visual assessment of the datasets indicated that the data were not normally distributed (Figure 13-1). The natural log of the data points was calculated and the XLSTAT statistical package for Microsoft Excel was used to perform a two-sided Grubbs outlier test with a 5% significance value on the transformed datasets. Twenty-six sites total were removed during the outlier test, eight from the reference standard dataset and eighteen from the non-reference and degraded dataset.



**Figure 13-1: Histogram of Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  Concentrations ( $\text{mg}/\text{m}^2$ ) for Reference and Non-Reference Datasets from WY**

The datasets contained values obtained using several sampling methods based on different habitat types, e.g., epilithic (coarse substrate), episammic (pea gravel  $\leq 5\text{mm}/\text{sand}$ ), epidendric (woody snag), and epipelic (silt). The reference data contains mostly epilithic samples, and thus there were inadequate reference data to develop reference curves for episammic, epidendric, and epipelic samples. Therefore, in addition to the outliers, samples collected using methods other than epilithic were removed from the datasets.

WDEQ has observed late season samples with high algal biomass, but not necessarily high chlorophyll concentrations, most likely due to chlorophyll being in a degradation phase because of decreasing water temperatures and shortened photoperiod. Final datasets consisted of samples collected between July 15 to October 1 for the mountains and between June 15 to

October 1 for the plains and basins. To address temporal variability, 81 data points were removed that fell outside of this date range.

The dataset was stratified by ecoregion to address geographic variability. Statistics for each dataset, stratified by ecoregion, are provided in Table 13-1.

**Table 13-1: Statistics for Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  Concentrations from the WDEQ Dataset**

Statistic	Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Concentrations (mg/m <sup>2</sup> ) by Ecoregion and Condition			
	Mountains		Plains and Basins	
	Non-Reference & Degraded	Reference Standard	Non-Reference & Degraded	Reference Standard
Number of Sites (n)	50	60	183	13
Geometric Mean	18	12	37	16
Average	42	20	83	24
Standard Deviation	54	20	105	22
Minimum	1.4	1.4	1.2	3.4
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	5	6	13	9
Median	19	14	42	16
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	53	27	117	29
Maximum	228	100	625	79

The summary statistics for the two datasets were evaluated and the following decisions were made using best professional judgement to determine the threshold values shown in Table 13-2.

- Given the non-normal distribution of the datasets and the criteria used to identify reference sites, the geometric mean from the reference standard datasets were used to inform the maximum index score.
- The threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk index scores was determined from the 75th percentile from the reference standard datasets.
- The threshold between not-functioning and functioning-at-risk index scores was determined from the 75th percentile from the non-reference and degraded datasets.
- The minimum index value for mountains is the x-intercept from the best-fit curve.
- Because the curve for plains and basins does not intercept the x-axis, the minimum index value for plains and basins was set to 150 mg/m<sup>2</sup>, a value identified in the literature to represent a threshold for excess benthic chlorophyll independent of landform or ecoregion (Dodds et al. 1998; Suplee et al. 2009; Welch et al. 1988).

A logarithmic curve best fit the threshold values that were selected from the statistical summary of the data and the single literature value. Note that the index values calculated by the WSQT v1.0 differ from the threshold values identified above, as the threshold values were used as an initial step to define the best fit logarithmic curves. The curve equations were then used to calculate index values from chlorophyll field values in the WSQT v1.0.

**CDPHE WQCD:** The CDPHE collects nutrient, benthic algae, and chlorophyll data in streams throughout Colorado as part of their efforts to address nutrient pollution. There are currently no numeric chlorophyll  $\alpha$  criteria for Colorado’s streams for the protection of aquatic life, as Colorado has a chlorophyll  $\alpha$  standard for recreation rather than biological health (Suplee et al. 2009). Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  concentrations were obtained from the WQCD dataset (described in Section 1.8) to compare to the WSQT v1.0 reference curves and update the stratification.<sup>5</sup> The WQCD dataset is stratified by biotype instead of ecoregion because the periphyton data collection by CDPHE support efforts to develop biological indicators. While biotypes and ecoregions are similar (CDPHE 2017 and Section 1.8), further data analysis is needed to determine whether biotype or ecoregion would be a better stratification for chlorophyll  $\alpha$  in Colorado.

Sites within the dataset were identified as reference, other, or stressed based on an assessment of the upstream watershed using GIS and aerial imagery (CDPHE 2017). Impacts considered in the analysis included land use, point sources, diversion, road density, abandoned mines, oil and gas facilities, and concentrated animal feeding operations. Due to the small number of stressed sites, these data are not presented; however, the reference sites are shown in addition to the results from all the sites within each biotype. The statistics for the WQCD dataset are provided in Table 13-2.

**Table 13-2: Statistics for Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  Concentrations from the WQCD dataset**

Statistic	Chlorophyll $\alpha$ Concentrations (mg/m <sup>2</sup> ) by Biotype and Condition					
	1 - Transition		2 - Mountains		3 - Plains & Xeric	
	All Sites	Reference	All Sites	Reference	All Sites	Reference
Number of Sites (n)	149	19	86	24	29	4
Geometric Mean	14	14	9	14	56	113
Average	32	21	23	26	104	150
Standard Deviation	93	20	36	25	105	96
Minimum	0	2	0	1	0	26
25 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	7	8	4	7	30	102
Median	15	14	9	18	74	169
75 <sup>th</sup> Percentile	37	27	25	41	127	218
Maximum	1,114	70	214	82	460	238

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.waterqualitydata.us/portal/>

The statistics from the WQCD dataset were evaluated against the criteria used to develop reference standards for the WSQT v1.0, and they generally corresponded well, including:

- The geometric mean of 12 mg/m<sup>2</sup> from the reference standard dataset for the Wyoming mountains, which was used to define an index value of 1.00 in the WSQT v1.0 corresponds well with the geometric mean of 14 mg/m<sup>2</sup> observed at the reference sites within the Colorado transition and mountains biotypes.
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile value of 27 mg/m<sup>2</sup> from the reference standard datasets for the Wyoming mountains, which was used to define an index value of 0.70 in the WSQT v1.0 corresponds well with the 27 mg/m<sup>2</sup> observed at the reference sites within the Colorado transition biotype and the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile from all the sites in the mountains biotype (25 mg/m<sup>2</sup>).
- The 75<sup>th</sup> percentile value of 117 mg/m<sup>2</sup> from the non-reference and degraded sites for the Wyoming basins and plains, which was used to define an index value of 0.30 in the WSQT v1.0 is near the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile value of 127 mg/m<sup>2</sup> observed in the Colorado plains and xeric biotype.

The CSQT SC also took into account the following observation regarding the CO dataset. In the mountain region, reference sites exhibit higher concentrations of chlorophyll  $\alpha$  than the overall mountain dataset; this trend is also apparent for the plains and xeric region where there are only 4 reference sites. The CSQT SC is not sure that reference standard conditions are captured in the dataset for these biotypes.

Reference curves for this metric are shown in Table 13-3 and Figure 13-2 and have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in CO. Further testing and analysis are needed to refine Colorado-specific reference curves.

**Table 13-3: Threshold Values (mg/m<sup>2</sup>) for Chlorophyll  $\alpha$  by Biotype**

Index Value	Field Value	
	1 – Transition 2 – Mountains	3 – Plains & Xeric
1.00	12	16
0.70	27	29
0.30	53	117
0.00	-	150

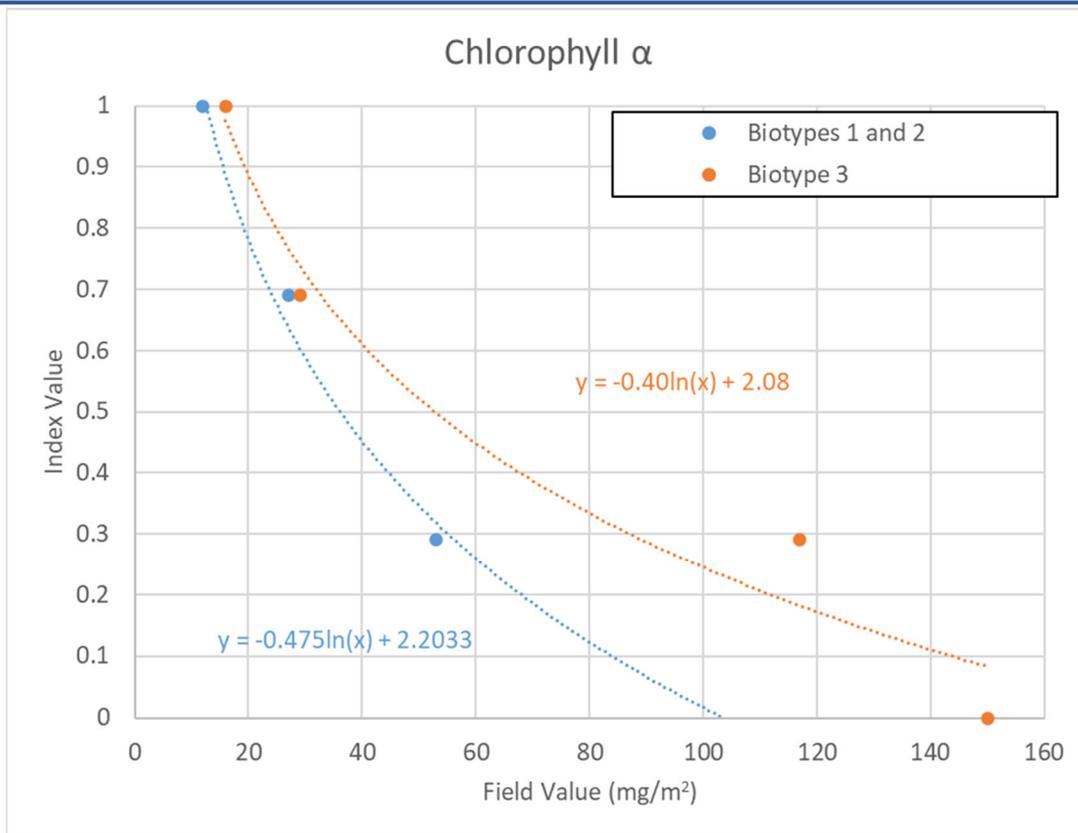


Figure 13-2: Chlorophyll α Reference Curves

Limitations and Data Gaps:

Data from Wyoming were used to derive the reference curves for this metric. Testing and further analysis are desirable to determine whether additional or modified reference curves are needed for Colorado. The WSQT metric is recommended only where riffles are present and contain gravel or larger bed materials. While other sampling methods were excluded from the Wyoming data analysis, CSQT SC decided that while the dataset focused on coarse-bed streams, lift/loss could still be shown in sand bed streams. Further data analysis will determine whether stratification by bed material is appropriate.

The reference curves are based on biotype groupings and some sites may be unfairly assessed due to natural variations within biotypes. This limitation can be addressed as more data are gathered and further statistical analyses are performed to determine statistically significant differences between regions throughout the state. Until additional data are available to further stratify and refine the reference curves, this variability should be dealt with on a case-by-case basis as the CSQT is applied.

Use of the chlorophyll α metric to represent the nutrient parameter assumes a direct correlation between nitrogen and/or phosphorus and benthic algae growth. Factors such as water clarity, canopy cover, scouring flows, water temperature, and grazing by fish and invertebrates also affect benthic algae biomass, thus also chlorophyll α concentrations, but are not directly accounted for by this metric. Site specific conditions need to be taken into account when applying this metric.

## Chapter 14. Macroinvertebrates Parameter

Functional Category: Biology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Benthic macroinvertebrates are commonly used as indicators of stream ecosystem structure and function and were included as one of the original parameters described in Harman et al. (2012). Benthic macroinvertebrates are key components of aquatic food webs that link organic matter and nutrient resources (e.g., leaf litter, algae, and detritus) with higher trophic levels. They are reliable indicators of condition because they spend all or most of their lives in water and differ in their tolerance to pollution. Macroinvertebrates respond to environmental stressors in predictable ways, are relatively easy and cost-effective to collect and identify in a laboratory, often live for more than a year, and have limited mobility. Unlike fish, macroinvertebrates cannot easily escape pollution, thus they have the capacity to integrate the effects of the stressors to which they are exposed.

Metrics:

- Colorado Multi-metric Index (CO MMI)

### **14.1 Colorado Multi-metric Index (CO MMI)**

Summary:

The Colorado Multi-Metric Index (CO MMI) is a set of macroinvertebrate-based indices calibrated to respond to stressors affecting aquatic communities within streams across three biotypes (CDPHE 2017). According to CDPHE (2017), “[w]ithin the benthic macroinvertebrate assemblage, metrics are selected that represent some measurable aspect of the community structure and function. These measurements are grouped into five metric categories: taxa richness, composition, pollution tolerance, functional feeding groups, and habit (mode of locomotion). Combining metrics from these categories into a multi-metric index transforms taxonomic identifications and individual counts into a unitless score that ranges from 0-100.”

Information on data collection, sample preservation, identification and enumeration and calculation of the MMI can be found in the appendices of CDPHE (2017), as well as the User Manual.

Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves for this metric were developed using the numeric attainment and impairment thresholds identified in the *Methodology to Determine Use Attainment for Rivers and Streams, Policy Statement 10-1* (CDPHE 2017). Attainment and impairment values were developed for the three biotypes in Colorado: mountains, transition and plains & xeric (Table 14-1). CDPHE uses reference or expected condition as the basis for characterizing attainment, and a significant departure from reference or expected condition as the basis for characterizing impairment. CDPHE also considers a “gray zone” that represents situations where “a biological condition is neither impaired nor in attainment of the use based on Interval and Equivalence tests in which neither hypothesis is rejected.” Through consultation with CDPHE, the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk was equated with the attainment values identified in

Table 14-1. Similarly, the impairment values in Table 14-1 were equated to the threshold between the functioning-at-risk and not-functioning condition. With this approach, the gray zone described by CDPHE aligns with the functioning-at-risk range of index scores in the CSQT. This approach is consistent with the functional capacity definitions outlined in Table 1-1 (page 11). The maximum index score (1.00) in the CSQT was set equal to the MMI score for high scoring waters identified in CDPHE (2017). The minimum index score (0.00) was set equal to an MMI score of 0. The CO MMI index value thresholds and reference curves are shown in Table 14-2 and Figure 14-1.

A broken linear relationship was used to extrapolate values between these points for the reference curves (Figure 14-1).

**Table 14-1: CO MMI Aquatic Life Use Thresholds for each Biotype (CDPHE 2017)**

Biotype	CO MMI Value		
	Impairment Threshold	Attainment Threshold	High Scoring Waters
1 - Transition	34	45	56
2 - Mountains	40	48	62
3 - Plains & Xeric	29	42	51

**Table 14-2: Threshold Values for CO MMI Scores by Biotype**

Index Value	Field Value		
	1 – Transition	2 – Mountains	3 – Plains & Xeric
1.00	56	62	51
0.70	45	48	42
0.29	34	40	29
0.00	0	0	0

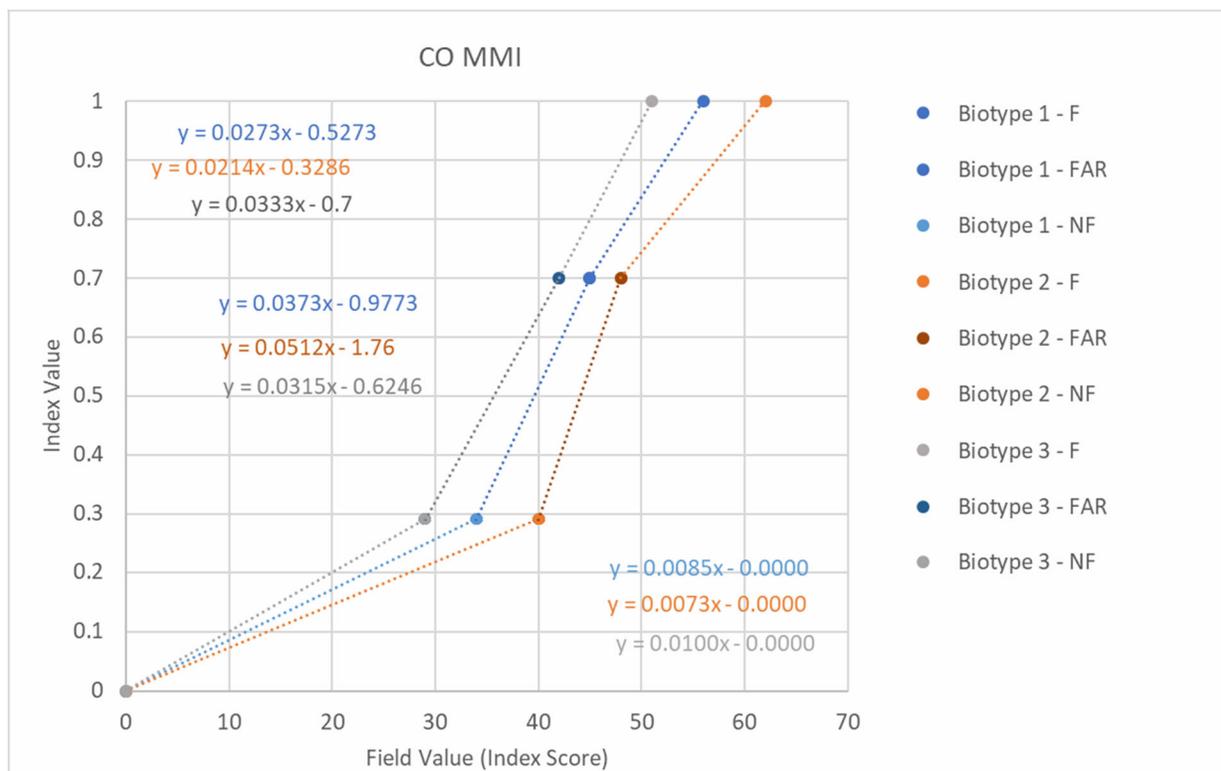


Figure 14-1: CO MMI Reference Curves

### Limitations and Data Gaps:

According to CDPHE (2017), the metrics included in the CO MMI were selected based on their “ability to discriminate between reference and stressed sites, represent multiple metric categories, are ecologically meaningful, and are not redundant with other metrics in the index. Because of this metric selection process, the metrics used in the MMI vary in their ability to detect or diagnose specific types of stress. The MMI is designed to detect environmental stresses that result in alteration of the biological community. No specific stressors are identified because the intent is to have a generalized tool that responds to a wide range of potential stressors. In other words, the MMI tool cannot determine if the stressor is a specific pollutant, pollution or habitat limitation (including flow).” A complete description of CO MMI limitations can be found in CDPHE (2017).

The CSQT does not include the auxiliary metrics defined in Policy Statement 10-1 (CDPHE 2017) that are used to determine attainment of aquatic life uses in Class 1 waters whose MMI scored between the attainment and impairment thresholds. These auxiliary metrics may be added to the CSQT as metrics for the macroinvertebrates parameter as the CSQT is tested and applied.

CDPHE (2017) evaluated the applicability of the CO MMI to larger rivers (exceeding 2,700 mi<sup>2</sup> watershed area), and concluded that the thresholds could be applied to rivers exceeding 2,700 mi<sup>2</sup> watershed area in the Yampa River, White River, Colorado River, Gunnison River, Dolores River, and San Juan River basins, but not in larger rivers in the South Platte River, Arkansas

River, Purgatoire River, and Rio Grande River basins. As such, the reference curves provided here may not be representative of the MMI values within the larger rivers in these basins.

While the CDPHE (2017) approach is intended for use in perennial streams, macroinvertebrate sample collection could also be completed in non-perennial streams when standing or flowing water is present. However, it is important to note that spatial and interannual variability may be greater within these systems, and sampling may have more limited repeatability.

## Chapter 15. Fish Parameter

Functional Category: Biology

Function-based Parameter Summary:

Fish are an integral part of many functioning stream systems and are an important management priority within Colorado. Fish populations require adequate streamflow, water quality and habitat availability to support their life history requirements. Different species vary in their habitat and life histories and are adapted to unique stream temperature and flow regimes and they serve as important indicators of ecological health.

This parameter is intended to document several aspects of Colorado fish assemblages, including the native diversity of the fish community in comparison to reference standards, the presence of Species of Greatest Conservation Need, and the biomass of wild trout populations.

Since there are no existing statewide biological indices used for fish in Colorado, metrics and reference curves for fish were adapted from the fish metrics in the WSQT v1.0 following consultation with Colorado Parks and Wildlife. Native fish metrics include a measure of native fish diversity and presence/absence of Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN). Native fish metrics focus on presence/absence metrics instead of abundance metrics due to the large inter-annual variability that naturally occurs in native fish populations. A wild trout biomass metric is also included to capture post-project increases in naturally-reproducing trout population biomass following restoration projects. This metric is only recommended at restoration sites where CPW management objectives relate to native or non-native wild trout species.

Reference standards for native fish species and SGCN are based on a departure from the expected species assemblages in Colorado (CSQT; User Manual Appendix C). These reference standards are informed by a comparison to expected species assemblages, which have been identified by CPW in Appendix C of the CSQT User Manual and the Statewide Wildlife Action Plan (CPW 2015). The reference standard is defined as the fish species that *should* be naturally present at the site *but for* anthropogenic constraints are not. Anthropogenic constraints, such as culverts, flow alteration, introduction of non-native species, and downstream barriers, may limit the current presence of native fish species and may limit the restoration potential at a site if those constraints are not removed as part of a project. The reference standard does not include species that have been extirpated and for which there are no plans or targets for reestablishment. The species assemblage lists provide a preliminary estimate of the expected number of native fish within a particular basin and thermal regime. Given the natural variability in fish assemblages within any basin due to underlying factors such as geology, flow regime, or natural barriers, the expected number of species may need to be modified based on sub-basin characteristics. The CSQT SC recommends project-specific coordination with CPW area fish biologists to account for natural factors that may influence species distribution and any necessary modifications to the species assemblage list.

Metrics:

- Native Fish Species Richness (% of expected)
- Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN) Absent Score
- Wild Trout Biomass (% increase)

## **15.1 Native Fish Species Richness**

### **Summary:**

This metric measures native fish species richness based on presence/absence data. This metric is calculated as the observed number of native species divided by the expected number of native species.

Native species distributions naturally vary between river basins and within any basin due to underlying factors such as geology, flow regime and duration, water temperatures, or natural barriers. A comparison of the number of native species currently observed to the expected number of species (O/E) is an indicator of anthropogenic disturbance that locally reduces species diversity. Anthropogenic disturbances that could alter the native species assemblages include barriers, flow alteration, water quality impairments, introduction of non-native species, habitat degradation or other disturbances that could alter spawning, foraging or refugia habitats (Angermeier and Schlosser 1995). Reference standards for native fish species are derived from the expected species assemblages and are described in the Parameter Summary above.

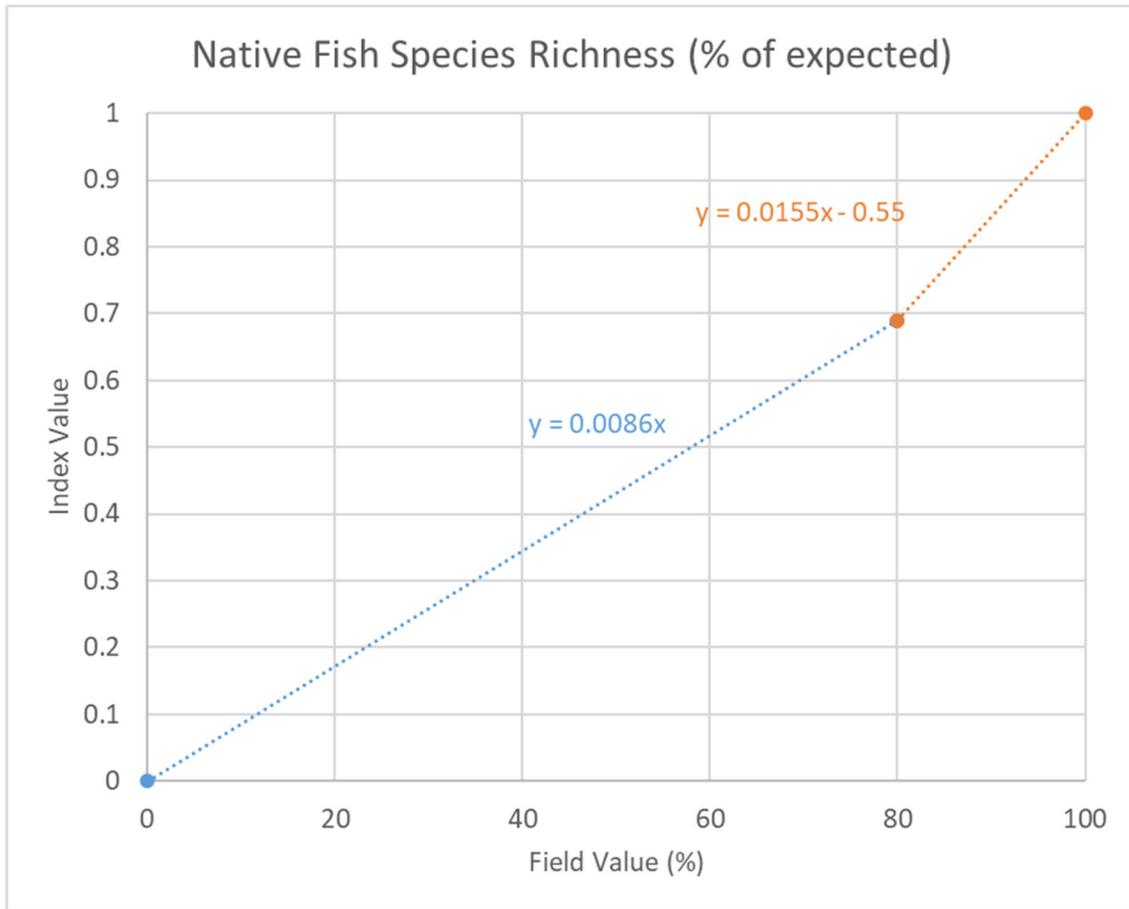
### **Reference Curve Development:**

Full native species richness (i.e., 100%) was used to represent a 1.00 index value, as it represents a pristine condition. For the threshold between functioning and functioning-at-risk, a native species richness value of 80% was used, and assigned an index value of 0.69. In more naturally depauperate fish communities, which occur in some watersheds and thermal regimes throughout in Colorado (e.g., that naturally have five or less species), less than 80% native species richness would reflect a community where one or more native species are absent. When no native species are present (i.e., 0% native species richness) there would be no functional capacity for this metric, and so this field value was assigned a 0.00 index value. Threshold value and reference curves are shown in Table 15-1 and Figure 15-1.

Because the total number of native species varies across basins, as well as between the thermal regimes within a basin, this metric is normalized by the expected number of species. As such, no additional stratification was considered. We recognize that the presence or absence of a single species will more strongly influence the score in basins with naturally lower native species richness; however in basins with naturally low native species richness, each individual species contributes more to the species diversity at the site.

**Table 15-1: Threshold Values for Native Fish Species Richness**

<b>Index Value</b>	<b>Field Value (% of expected)</b>
1.00	100
0.69	80
0.00	0



**Figure 15-1: Native Fish Species Richness Reference Curve**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

There is uncertainty about the fish species that comprise the natural fish community for most locations and it requires a judgment call by a professional fisheries biologist to establish a species list for a location. The assembled native species lists available in Appendix C of the User Manual provide a starting point for the potential maximum number of species at a location within a given river basin. Consideration should also be given to whether species would naturally be present within the stream temperature/gradient class. However due to variability in sub-basin geology, flow regime, and other natural factors, these lists require coordination with the CPW prior to finalizing an expected number of native species at any given site.

## 15.2 Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN) Absent Score

### Summary:

This metric is a direct measure of the presence/absence of Species of Greatest Conservation Need (SGCN) within a reach. This categorical metric considers whether a SGCN expected to be present is observed in the reach; the metric also considers the SGCN tier of the species.

Species of Greatest Conservation Need are identified in the State Wildlife Action Plan (CPW 2015) as those species whose conservation status warrants increased management attention and funding, as well as consideration in conservation, and land use and development planning in Colorado. For any project where this metric is used, the practitioner should consult with the area fisheries biologist and Native Aquatic Species Biologist at CPW to determine whether there is natural potential for SGCN to be present at the site. Natural potential considers natural factors, not anthropogenic constraints, that may restrict the distribution of a SGCN. The State Wildlife Action Plan (SWAP 2015) classifies SGCN species into two tiers where Tier 1 species have the highest conservation priority.<sup>2</sup> The number of species with natural potential to occur at the site in each tier is used to calculate the field value for the CSQT. If no SGCN are expected to occur within the project site, this metric would not be calculated.

### Reference Curve Development:

The field value for this metric is a function of the number of expected SGCN that are absent from a site and the Tier of that species. Tier 1 species are weighted twice as high as Tier 2 species (Table 15-2). Note that if there are no species in a tier expected at a site then there are no species absent for that tier.

**Table 15-2: How to Determine the Field Value for SGCN Absent Score**

SGCN Species (A)	Multiplier (B)	Equation
# Tier 1 Species Absent	2	$C_1 = A_1 * B_1$
# Tier 2 Species Absent	1	$C_2 = A_2 * B_2$
Field Value for the CSQT =		$C_1 + C_2$

This weighted approach reflects the relative importance of species within the tiers while remaining consistent with the management goals and approaches for SGCN by the State of Colorado. From a restoration perspective, restoration of a Tier 1 species would provide the greatest functional lift to the fish community and should result in the highest index scores. Similarly, loss of a Tier 1 species from a site should be considered a significant functional loss.

The reference criteria for this metric are the same as with those derived for the WSQT v1.0. The reference criteria are categorical, and each category was assigned a specific index value score based on best professional judgement after consultation with CPW area fisheries biologists. No reference curve was developed. If all expected SGCN, regardless of Tier, are present, the field value would be 0.00, and this equates to an index value of 1.00, i.e., a reference standard condition. The functioning-at-risk range of index values represents sites that have the potential to support SGCN. A site that lacks one Tier 2 species but all expected Tier 1 species are present

<sup>2</sup> [https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO\\_SWAP\\_Chapter2.pdf](https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO_SWAP_Chapter2.pdf)

will score an index value of 0.69. While a site that is missing either one Tier 1 species or two Tier 2 species will score an index value of 0.30. Sites that score 3 or more, the equivalent of at least three Tier 2 species or one Tier 1 and one Tier 2, were assigned an index value of zero and were assumed to not support SGCN.

**Table 15-3: Threshold Values for SGCN Absent Score**

Index Value	Field Value
1.00	0
0.69	1
0.30	2
0.00	≥ 3

Limitations and Data Gaps:

There is uncertainty about the fish species that comprise the natural fish community for most locations and it requires a judgment call by a professional fisheries biologist to establish a species list for a location. The assembled native species lists available in Appendix C of the User Manual provide a starting point for the potential maximum number of species at a location within a given river basin. Consideration should also be given to whether species would naturally be present within the stream temperature/gradient class. However, due to variability in sub-basin geology, flow regime, and other natural factors, these lists require coordination with the CPW prior to finalizing an expected number of native species at any given site.

**15.3 Wild Trout Biomass**

Summary:

This metric is a direct comparison of pre- and post-project wild trout biomass and is calculated by comparing the biomass before and after a project, after normalizing the data to a nearby control site. This metric is consistent with the approach undertaken by Binns (1999) in their monitoring of fish habitat improvement projects.

This metric focuses on the productivity of wild trout game fish where CPW management objectives relate to native or non-native wild trout species. Wild trout include naturally reproducing populations of native and non-native trout; trout of potential hatchery origin should not be included in this metric, and users should consider whether this metric should be applied based on the potential for nearby stocked populations to influence biomass numbers within a project reach. Measurements of biomass can be used to infer whether there have been gains in wild trout productivity at restoration sites where fisheries goals and objectives have been identified. It is not intended to be applied at impact sites or to draw inferences about reductions in biomass due to anthropogenic activities.

This metric measures the increase in wild trout biomass following a restoration project relative to the change observed at a control site. Fish are collected consistent with the approach outlined in Bonar et al. (2009). Fish baseline data from a nearby control reach is required to account for natural inter- and intra-annual variability in fish populations and reduce the influence of climactic or other external factors in determining increases in biomass associated with a restoration project. The control reach should have a similar elevation and geomorphic setting as the project

reach and should be of reference quality (to the extent practicable). A control reach can be located upstream or downstream from the project reach, or in a separate catchment within the same river basin as the project reach, but not immediately adjacent to the project reach. A control reach that is geographically proximate to the project reach but outside the influence of the project actions is preferred.

#### Reference Curve Development:

Reference curves for this metric have been adopted from the WSQT v1.0 for use and testing in CO. The WSQT v1.0 stratified by productivity classifications identified by the State of Wyoming, and the CSQT modified the productivity classification, as described below, but maintained the same reference curves for each productivity class.

This metric focuses on the increase in wild trout biomass following a restoration project, and index values and reference curves are associated with the magnitude of change in biomass (pounds/acre) compared with baseline conditions. As such, reference curves were derived following consideration of the magnitude of change that would be considered marginal and significant.

The change in biomass metric was stratified by productivity ranges, recognizing that streams with an already productive fishery may be less likely to see large additional increases in productivity following a restoration project. The productivity classes for this metric are modified from the WGFD classifications related to measured fish biomass (Annear et al. 2006) that were used to stratify the metric in WSQT v1.0. Modifications included revising the units from lbs/mile to lbs/acre to align with the biomass units used by CPW. The high productivity class includes streams where current biomass is equal to or greater than 60 pounds per acre, which is the biomass criteria for a Gold Medal fishery in Colorado. The moderate productivity class ranges from 30-60 pounds per acre and the low productivity class includes streams that have less than 30 pounds per acre.

A driving assumption in this stratification is that streams identified as high productivity can be considered the most productive and are most likely to be closest to their biologic potential. As such, it would be relatively difficult to increase biomass in these streams. Conversely, the low productivity streams have the lowest level of productivity and are more likely to be below their biologic potential. The assumption is that there is greater potential to improve biomass in a low productivity stream. Reference curves were developed to reflect these assumptions, and therefore require less biomass improvement in a stream that is already highly productive than a low productivity stream.

Results compiled by Binns (1999) from a review of trout habitat restoration projects constructed by WGFD between 1953 and 1998 generally support these assumptions and show that habitat restoration projects in lower productivity fisheries yielded greater increases in biomass than in higher productivity fisheries (Table 15-4). However, the streams with low productivity, identified as green ribbon streams by WGFD, did not show greater increases in productivity than yellow ribbon streams. Binns (1999) inferred that yellow ribbon stream systems may be limited by watershed-scale issues that reduce the potential for greater increases in biomass. Based on these results, the WSQT v1.0 did not stratify between yellow and green ribbon streams but proposed the same reference curve for both. This approach was carried forward to the CSQT to define low productivity streams.

Population estimates conducted on natural fish communities are known to vary widely between years due to natural variability in fish populations as well as sampling error (Dey and Annear 2001, House 1995). This background variation was considered in developing the sampling methods for this metric (e.g., multiple sampling events and the use of a control site) and in considering what change in biomass would be detectable. Professional judgment and experience with population data in Wyoming streams suggested that at least a 5% change in biomass would have to occur to be detectable through sampling. High productivity streams were thus assigned a minimum index value (0.00) for changes in biomass less than 5%. Given the assumptions above regarding differences in productivity across stream classes, minimum index values were adjusted upwards in 5% increments for each productivity class to account for the greater potential for increases across stream productivity classes.

Thresholds for determining the reference curves were developed using professional judgment, considering the assumptions about productive capacity and population estimate variability. Binns (1999) evaluated success based on post project changes in several biomass metrics. To define success, he relied on criteria proposed by Hunt (1988), including a post-treatment percent change increase in one of the trout population metrics of 25% or more, and a change of 50% or more for Level 1 and Level 2 success criteria, respectively. While these are arbitrary criteria, they seem reasonable and related to “the long-term annual benefits from management investments of the kind that have been made to remedy perceived deficiencies in trout carrying capacity and/or the sport fishery” (Hunt 1988, p.4).

We determined that a 25% increase in biomass is a measurable increase that could reasonably represent a substantial lift in a high productivity stream. In moderate productivity streams, we determined that a 50% increase in biomass could reasonably represent a substantial lift. WGFD habitat improvement projects have exceeded this value in moderate productivity (red ribbon streams; Table 15-4), with an average increase of 104% pounds/acre for wild trout fisheries. Given the assumption that low productivity streams should have the capacity to increase biomass the most, a 75% increase in biomass was identified as a realistic, measurable and substantial improvement. This value is reasonable when compared with Binns (1999), who showed increases well above a 200% increase in wild trout biomass in yellow and green ribbon streams.

Threshold values and reference curves are shown in Table 15-5 and Figure 15-2.

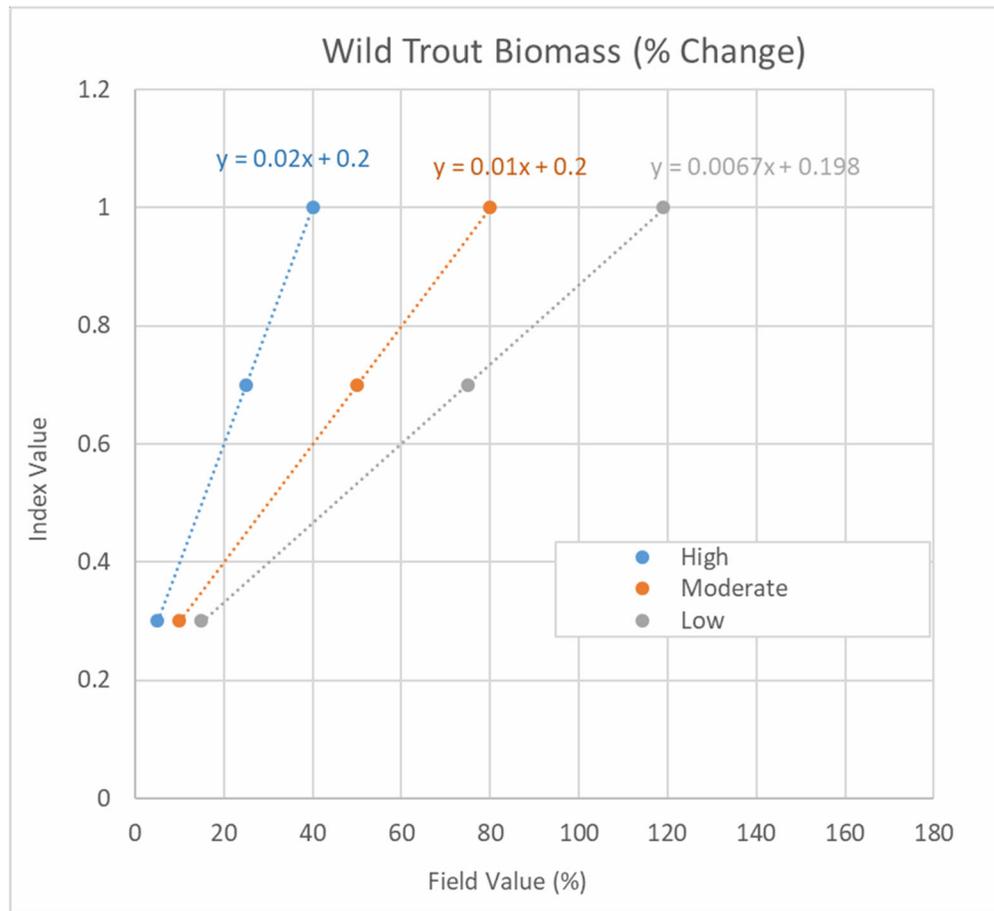
**Table 15-4: Mean empirical values for trout biomass averaged over habitat improvement projects sorted for WGFD stream class. Note Wyoming stream classes are defined using lbs/mile, which is different than the productivity classes for Colorado that are defined using lbs/acre. Adapted from Binns (1999).**

Stream Class	Number of projects with measurements	Reference (lbs./acre)	Treatment (lbs./acre)	Mean % Change
Blue Ribbon (>600 lbs/mile)	0	-	-	-
Red Ribbon (300-600 lbs/mile)	Wild Trout = 3	64	122	104
	*Mixed Pop. = 5	52	106	115
Yellow Ribbon (50-300 lbs/mile)	Wild Trout = 15	42	78	316
	*Mixed Pop. = 23	43	87	303
Green Ribbon (<50 lbs/mile)	Wild Trout = 7	28	83	248
	*Mixed Pop. = 8	31	85	230

\* The mixed trout category summarizes all projects combined and include both containing only wild trout and those where fish of hatchery origin were present. (Adapted from Binns 1999)

**Table 15-5: Threshold Values for Wild Trout Biomass**

Stream Productivity Class	Field Values by corresponding Index Value (i)			
	No Functional Lift	Substantial Functional Lift		
	i = 0.00	i = 0.30	i = 0.70	i = 1.00
High (>60 lbs/acre)	< 5	5	25	≥ 40
Moderate (30-60 lbs/acre)	< 10	10	50	≥ 80
Low (<30 lbs/acre)	< 15	15	75	≥ 119



**Figure 15-2: Wild Trout Biomass Reference Curves**

Limitations and Data Gaps:

The percentage increases in Table 15-5 forming the basis for the reference curves are based on best professional judgement and are supported by previous evaluations of restoration projects in Wyoming (Binns 1999). This metric would benefit from additional data analysis and case studies when Colorado project information becomes available.

This metric is built on an assumption that restoration work can increase fish biomass permanently, or at least throughout a project monitoring period of 5-10 years. Examples exist (Whiteway et al. 2010, Pierce et al. 2013), although research also suggests that fish populations can take five or more years to respond to restoration (Binns 1994; Hunt 1976). This limitation should be taken into consideration when developing monitoring plans.

An improvement in non-native wild trout biomass could potentially lead to loss or declines in native fish species occurring within a reach. As noted above, this metric is intended to be used where CPW management objectives relate to native or non-native wild trout species. Consultation with area fish biologists is necessary before selecting and using this metric in the tool. This consultation should inform metric selection and project design, reducing the potential for these types of trade-offs between native and non-native species.

Results from this metric could be influenced by stocking or modifications to fishing regulations. Consultation with area fish biologists is important to determine whether certain species or age classes should be excluded from biomass estimates because of stocking efforts within the watershed. Also, if changes in regulations are implemented concurrently with a project, they should be considered when interpreting results from this metric, as changes in regulations may affect biomass estimates within a project site.

## Chapter 16. References Cited

- Abrahams AD, Li G, Atkinson JF. 1995. Step-pool streams: adjustment to maximum flow resistance. *Water Resources Research*. 31(10):2593-2602.  
<https://doi.org/10.1029/95WR01957>
- Al-Hamdan OZ, Pierson FB, Nearing MA, Williams CJ, Stone JJ, Kormos PR, Boll J, Weltz MA. 2013. Risk Assessment of Erosion from Concentrated Flow on Rangelands Using Overland Flow Distribution and Shear Stress Partitioning. *American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers ISSN 2151-0032*. 56(2):539-548.  
<http://www.sagestep.org/pubs/pubs/061Al-Hamdan.pdf>
- Allan JD. 1995. *Stream Ecology: Structure and Function of Running Waters*. London (England): Chapman and Hall.
- Allan, JD, Castillo MM. 2007. *Stream Ecology: Structure and Function of Running Waters*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Dordrecht (The Netherlands): Springer.
- Allyón D, Almodóvar A, Nicola CG, Elvira B. 2010. Ontogenetic and spatial variations in brown trout habitat selection. *Ecology of Freshwater Fish*. 19(3):420-432.  
<https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0633.2010.00426.x>
- Angermeier PL, Schlosser IJ. 1995. Conserving aquatic biodiversity: Beyond species and populations. *American fisheries society symposium [AM. FISH. SOC. SYMP.]*. 1995; 17:402-414.
- Annear T, Chisholm I, Beecher H, Locke A, Aarrestad P, Coomer C, Estes C, Hunt J, Jacobson R, Jobsis G, et al. 2004. *Instream flows for riverine resource stewardship*. Revised ed. Cheyenne (WY): Instream Flow Council.
- Annear T, Wolff S, Wiley B, Keith R, Johnson K, Mavrakis P, Meyer C. 2006. Modification of the Wyoming Game and Fish Department's system for classifying stream fisheries. Wyoming Game and Fish Division Administrative Report.  
[https://wgfd.wyo.gov/WGFD/media/content/PDF/Fishing/Stream\\_Class/WYSTREAM\\_STREAMRANKING.pdf](https://wgfd.wyo.gov/WGFD/media/content/PDF/Fishing/Stream_Class/WYSTREAM_STREAMRANKING.pdf)
- Arrigoni, AS, Poole, GC, Mertes, LA, O'Daniel, SJ, Woessner, WW, Thomas SA. 2008. Buffered, lagged, or cooled? Disentangling hyporheic influences on temperature cycles in stream channels. *Water Resources Research*. 44(9). W09418, doi:10.1029/2007WR006480
- Beechie, TJ, Sear DA, Olden JD, Pess GR, Buffington JM, Moir H, Roni P, Pollock MM. 2010. Process-based Principles for Restoring River Ecosystems. *BioScience*. 60(3):209–222.  
<https://doi.org/10.1525/bio.2010.60.3.7>
- Beechie, TJ, Richardson JS, Gurnell AM, Negishi J. 2012. Watershed Processes, Human Impacts, and Process-based Restoration. In: Roni P, Beechie T, editors. *Stream and Watershed Restoration: A Guide to Restoring Riverine Processes and Habitats*. 1<sup>st</sup> ed. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd. p. 11-49. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781118406618.ch2>
- Bernhardt ES, Palmer MA, Allan JD, Alexander G, Baranas K, Brooks S, Carr J, Clayton S,

- Dahm C, Follstad-Shah J, et al. 2005. Synthesizing US River Restoration Efforts. *Science*. 308(5722):636-637.
- Bevenger GS, King RM. 1995. A pebble count procedure for assessing watershed cumulative effects. US Department of Agriculture Forest Service Research Paper RM-RP-319. Fort Collins (CO): Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station.  
[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_rm/rm\\_rp319.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_rm/rm_rp319.pdf)
- Binns NA. 1982. Habitat quality index procedures manual. Cheyenne (WY): Wyoming Game and Fish Department.  
<https://www.sciencebase.gov/catalog/item/4f4e4af4e4b07f02db6921d2>
- Binns NA. 1994. Long-term responses of trout and macrohabitats to habitat management in a Wyoming headwater stream. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 14(1):87-98. [https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675\(1994\)014<0087:LTROTA>2.3.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675(1994)014<0087:LTROTA>2.3.CO;2)
- Binns NA. 1999. A compendium of trout stream habitat improvement projects done by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department, 1953-1998. Cheyenne (WY): Wyoming Game and Fish Department, Fish Division.  
<https://wgfd.wyo.gov/WGFD/media/content/PDF/Habitat/Habitat%20Information/Riparian%20Information/Compendium-of-Trout-Stream-Habitat.pdf>
- Binns NA, Eisermann FM. 1979. Quantification of fluvial trout habitat in Wyoming. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*. 108(3):215-228. [https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8659\(1979\)108<215:QOFTHI>2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8659(1979)108<215:QOFTHI>2.0.CO;2)
- Blackburn-Lynch W, Agouridis CT, Barton CD. 2017. Development of regional curves for hydrologic landscape regions (HLR) in the contiguous United States. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 53(4):903-928.  
<https://doi.org/10.1111/1752-1688.12540>
- Bonar SA, Hubert WA, Willis DW, editors. 2009. Standard methods for sampling North American freshwater fishes. Published by American Fisheries Society.
- Booth DB, Jackson CR. 1997. Urbanization of aquatic systems - degradation thresholds, stormwater detection, and the limits of mitigation. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*. 33(5):1077-1090.  
<https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/2c44/7d3db02225496f2557e44618fab5d0a209ad.pdf?ga=2.212518804.1067380809.1556216580-302000991.1556216580>
- Brown TG, Hartman GF. 1987. Use of small, temporary, floodplain tributaries by juvenile salmonids in a west coast rain-forest drainage basin, carnation creek, British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 44(2):262-70.  
<https://doi.org/10.1139/f87-035>
- Brungs WA, Jones BR. 1977. Temperature criteria for freshwater fish: Protocol and procedures. Duluth (MN): U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development, EPA-600/3-77-061.  
<https://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPDF.cgi/9100T3ND.PDF?Dockkey=9100T3ND.PDF>

- Buffington JM, Montgomery DR. 2013. Geomorphic classification of rivers. In: Shroder J, Wohl E, editors. *Treatise on geomorphology; fluvial geomorphology*. San Diego (CA): Academic Press. 9:730-767.  
[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_other/rmrs\\_2013\\_buffington\\_j001.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_other/rmrs_2013_buffington_j001.pdf)
- Bull LJ, Kirkby MJ, editors. 2002. *Dryland rivers: hydrology and geomorphology of semi-arid channels*. West Sussex (England): John Wiley and Sons, Ltd.
- Burkholder, B.K., Grant, G.E., Haggerty, R., Khangaonkar, T., Wampler, P. J. (2008) Influence of hyporheic flow and geomorphology on temperature of a large, gravel-bed river, Clackamas River, Oregon, USA. *Hydrological Processes* 22 (7):941-953
- Bunte K, Abt, SR. 2001. Sampling surface and subsurface particle-size distributions in wadable gravel- and cobble-bed streams for analyses in sediment transport, hydraulics, and streambed monitoring. US Department of Agriculture Forest Service General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-74. Fort Collins (CO): Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station.
- Bureau of Land Management (BLM). 2017. AIM national aquatic monitoring framework: field protocol for wadeable lotic systems. Tech Reference 1735-2. Denver (CO): US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management, National Operations Center.  
<https://www.blm.gov/download/file/fid/17970>
- Carlisle DM, Falcone J, Wolock DM, Meador MR, Norris RH. 2010. Predicting the natural flow regime: models for assessing hydrological alteration in streams. *River Research and Applications*. 26(2):118-136. <https://doi.org/10.1002/rra.1247>
- Carsey, K., G. Kittel, K. Decker, D. J. Cooper, and D. Culver. 2003. *Field Guide to the Wetland and Riparian Plant Associations of Colorado*. Colorado Natural Heritage Program, Fort Collins, CO.
- Cherry DS, Dickson KL, Cairns Jr J, Stauffer, JR. 1977. Preferred, avoided and lethal temperatures of fish during rising temperature conditions. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada*. 34(2):239-246.  
[https://www.researchgate.net/publication/237180300\\_PREFERRED\\_AVOIDED\\_AND\\_LETHAL\\_TEMPERATURES\\_OF\\_FISH\\_DURING\\_RISING\\_TEMPERATURE\\_CONDITIONS](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/237180300_PREFERRED_AVOIDED_AND_LETHAL_TEMPERATURES_OF_FISH_DURING_RISING_TEMPERATURE_CONDITIONS)
- Chin A. 1989. Step pools in stream channels. *Progress in Physical Geography* 13(3):391-407.  
<https://doi.org/10.1177/030913338901300304>
- Cluer B, Thorne C. 2013. A Stream Evolution Model Integrating Habitat and Ecosystem Benefits. *River Research and Applications*. 30(2):135-154.  
<https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/97b5/7edce62571b00897b0ba5c182076772cf92a.pdf>
- Clifford NJ, Richards KS. 1992. The reversal hypothesis and the maintenance of riffle-pool sequences. In: Carling PA, Petts GE, editors. *Lowland floodplain rivers*. Chichester: John Wiley and Sons. p. 43-70.

Colorado Parks and Wildlife. 2015. State wildlife action plan (SWAP).

[https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO\\_SWAP\\_FULLVERSION.pdf](https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO_SWAP_FULLVERSION.pdf)

Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment (CDPHE). 2011. Temperature criteria methodology. Policy Statement 06-1. Denver (CO): CDPHE, Water Quality Control

Commission. <https://www.colorado.gov/pacific/sites/default/files/Policy%2006-1-2017.pdf>

CDPHE. 2014. Guidance for Implementation of Colorado's Narrative Sediment Standard.

Regulation #31, Section 31.11(1)(a)(i). Policy 98-1. Denver (CO): CDPHE, Water Quality Control Commission.

CDPHE. 2015. Standard operating procedures for the collection of periphyton samples. Denver (CO): CDPHE, Water Quality Control Division, Watershed Section.

<https://www.colorado.gov/pacific/sites/default/files/SOP%20-%20Collection%20of%20Periphyton%20Samples%20-%20122215.pdf>

CDPHE. 2016. Standard operating procedures for the collection of water chemistry samples. Denver (CO): CDPHE, Water Quality Control Division, Environmental Data Unit.

<https://www.colorado.gov/pacific/sites/default/files/SOP%20-%20Collection%20of%20Water%20Chemistry%20Samples%20-%20042116.pdf>

CDPHE. 2017. Aquatic life use attainment: methodology to determine use attainment for rivers and streams. Policy Statement 10-1. Denver (CO): CDPHE, Water Quality Control

Commission. [https://www.colorado.gov/pacific/sites/default/files/Policy%2010-1\\_Appendices.pdf](https://www.colorado.gov/pacific/sites/default/files/Policy%2010-1_Appendices.pdf)

Colorado Stream Quantification Tool Steering Committee (CSQT SC). 2020. Colorado Stream Quantification Tool and Debit Calculator (CSQT) User Manual v1.0. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds (Contract # EP-C-17-001), Washington, D.C.

Copeland, RR, McComas DN, Thorne CR, Soar PJ, Jonas MM, Fripp JB. 2001. Hydraulic design of stream restoration projects. ERDC/CHL TR-01-28. Washington (DC): US Army Corps of Engineers.

[https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1043219.pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1043219.pdf)

Darby SE, Thornes CR. 1992. Impact of channelization on the Mimmshall Brook, Hertfordshire, UK. Regulated Rivers: Research and Applications. 7(2):193-204.

<https://doi.org/10.1002/rrr.3450070207>

Davis JC, Minshall WG, Robinson CT, Landres P. 2001. Monitoring Wilderness Stream Ecosystems. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-70. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs\\_gtr070.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_gtr070.pdf)

Dey PD, Annear TC. 2001. Inter-annual variation in trout population estimates among six Wyoming Streams and predictions of the PMB and HQI models. Wyoming Game and Fish Department Administrative Report.

- Dodds WK, Jones JR, Welch EB. 1998. Suggested classification of stream trophic state: Distributions of temperate stream types by chlorophyll, total nitrogen, and phosphorus. *Water Research*. 32(5):1455-1462.  
[https://www.owrb.ok.gov/quality/standards/pdf\\_standards/scenicrivers/Dodds%20Jones%20Welch%201998.PDF](https://www.owrb.ok.gov/quality/standards/pdf_standards/scenicrivers/Dodds%20Jones%20Welch%201998.PDF)
- Dodds WK, Smith VH. 2016. Nitrogen, phosphorus, and eutrophication in streams. *Inland Waters*. 6(2):155-164. <http://dx.doi.org/10.5268/IW-6.2.909>
- Doyle MW., Singh J., Lave R., Robertson, MM. 2015. The morphology of streams restored for market and nonmarket purposes: Insights from a mixed natural-social science approach. *Water Resources Research*, 51(7), 5603-5622.
- Dunham J, Chandler G, Rieman B, Martin D. 2005. Measuring stream temperature with data loggers: A user's guide. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-150WWW. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.  
[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs\\_gtr150.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_gtr150.pdf)
- Dunne T, Leopold L. 1978. *Water in Environmental Planning*. New York (NY): W.H. Freeman and Company.
- Dutnell RC. 2000. Development of bankfull discharge and channel geometry relationships for natural channel design in Oklahoma using a fluvial geomorphic approach. Master's thesis research paper published by University of Oklahoma Graduate College.
- Egozi R, Ashmore P. 2008. Defining and measuring braiding intensity. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. 33(14):2121-2138. <https://doi.org/10.1002/esp.1658>
- Emmert B. 2004. Regional Curve Development for Kansas. In: D'Ambrosio J, editor. *Proceeding of the ASAE conference: Self-sustaining solutions for streams, wetlands and watersheds*. St. Joseph (MI): American Society of Agricultural Engineers. p 27-34. DOI 10.13031/2013.17373
- Environmental Law Institute (ELI), The Nature Conservancy. 2014. *Watershed Approach Handbook: Improving Outcomes and Increasing Benefits Associated with Wetland and Stream Restoration and Protection Projects*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), EPA Wetlands Program Development Grant No. WD-83501201.
- Environmental Law Institute (ELI), Stream Mechanics, The Nature Conservancy. 2016. *Stream mitigation: Science, policy, and practice*. <https://www.eli.org/sites/default/files/eli-pubs/stream-mitigation-science-policy-and-practice-final-report.pdf>
- Espgren GD. 1996. Development of instream flow recommendations in Colorado using R2CROSS. Denver (CO): Colorado Water Conservation Board Water Rights Investigation Section.
- Fausch KD, Torgersen CE, Baxter CV, Li HW. 2002. Landscapes to riverscapes: Bridging the gap between research and conservation of stream fishes: A continuous view of the river is needed to understand how processes interacting among scales set the context for stream fishes and their habitat. *Bioscience*. 52(6):483-498. <https://doi.org/10.1641/0006->

[3568\(2002\)052\[0483:LTRBTG\]2.0.CO;2](#)

- Fernald AG, Landers DH, Wigington PJ. 2006. Water quality changes in hyporheic flow paths between a large gravel bed river and off-channel alcoves in Oregon, USA. *River Research and Applications*. 22(10):1111-1124.
- Fischenich JC. 2003. Effects of riprap on riverine and riparian ecosystems. ERDC/EL TR-03-4. Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center. <https://el.erdcdren.mil/elpubs/pdf/trel03-4.pdf>
- Fischenich JC. 2006. Functional objectives for stream restoration. EMRRP Technical Notes Collection (ERDC TN-EMRRP-SR-52). Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center. <https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/f5e8/bcbbbab43aad99506ff5bbd73a7895dcec56.pdf>
- Fischer RA, Fischenich JC. 2000. Design recommendations for riparian corridors and vegetated buffer strips. EMRRP Technical Notes Collection (ERDC TN-EMRRP-SR-24). Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center. <http://www.elkhornsloughctp.org/uploads/files/1381443282Fischer%20and%20Fischenich%202000%20buffer%20design.pdf>
- Foster K. 2012. Bankfull-channel geometry and discharge curves for the Rocky Mountains Hydrologic Region in Wyoming. USGS Scientific Investigations Report 2012-5178. <https://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2012/5178/sir2012-5178.pdf>
- Gregory KJ, Gurnell AM, Hill CT, Tooth S. 1994. Stability of the pool-riffle sequence in changing river channels. *Regulated Rivers Research and Management*. 9(1):35-43.
- Hack JT. 1960. Interpretation of erosional topography in humid temperate regions. *American Journal of Science*. 258-A:80-97.
- Haldar A, Mahadevan S. 1999. Probability, reliability, and statistical methods in engineering design. John Wiley and Sons, Inc.
- Hammer TR. 1972. Stream channel enlargement due to urbanization. *American Geophysical Union. Water Resources Research*. 8(6):1530-1540.
- Hargett EG. 2011. The Wyoming Stream Integrity Index (WSII) – Multimetric indices for assessment of wadeable streams and large rivers in Wyoming. Cheyenne (WY): Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division. [http://deq.wyoming.gov/media/attachments/Water%20Quality/Surface%20Water%20Monitoring/Publications/wqd-wpp-monitoring\\_Wyoming-Stream-Integrity-Index-Multimetric-Indices-for-Assessment-of-Wadeable-Streams-and-Large-Rivers.pdf](http://deq.wyoming.gov/media/attachments/Water%20Quality/Surface%20Water%20Monitoring/Publications/wqd-wpp-monitoring_Wyoming-Stream-Integrity-Index-Multimetric-Indices-for-Assessment-of-Wadeable-Streams-and-Large-Rivers.pdf)
- Harman WA, Barrett TB, Jones CJ, James A, Peel HM. 2017. Application of the large woody debris index: a field user manual version 1. Raleigh (NC): Stream Mechanics and Ecosystem Planning & Restoration. [https://stream-mechanics.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/LWDI-Manual\\_V1.pdf](https://stream-mechanics.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/12/LWDI-Manual_V1.pdf)
- Harman W, Starr R, Carter M, Tweedy K, Clemmons M, Suggs K, Miller C. 2012. A function-

- based framework for stream assessment and restoration projects. EPA 843-K-12-006. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds. [https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-08/documents/a\\_function\\_based\\_framework\\_for\\_stream\\_assessment\\_3.pdf](https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-08/documents/a_function_based_framework_for_stream_assessment_3.pdf)
- Harman WA, Jones CJ. 2017. North Carolina stream quantification tool: spreadsheet user manual, NC SQT v3.0. Raleigh (NC): Environmental Defense Fund. <https://www.edf.org/sites/default/files/Quantification-Tool-User-Manual.pdf>
- Harrelson CC, Rawlins CL, Potyondy JP. 1994. Stream channel reference sites: an illustrated guide to field technique. General Technical Report RM-245. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station. [https://www.fs.fed.us/biology/nsaec/fishxing/fplibrary/Harrelson\\_1994\\_Stream\\_Channel\\_Reference\\_Sites\\_An\\_Illustrated.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/biology/nsaec/fishxing/fplibrary/Harrelson_1994_Stream_Channel_Reference_Sites_An_Illustrated.pdf)
- Hauer FR, Cook BJ, Gilbert MC, Clairain Jr EJ, Smith RD. 2002. A regional guidebook for applying the hydrogeomorphic approach to assessing wetland functions of riverine floodplains in Northern Rocky Mountains. ERDC/EL TR-02-21. Washington (DC): US Army Corps of Engineers, Engineer Research and Development Center. [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/235206098\\_A\\_Regional\\_Guidebook\\_for\\_Applying\\_the\\_Hydrogeomorphic\\_Approach\\_to\\_Assessing\\_Wetland\\_Functions\\_of\\_Riverine Floodplains in the Northern Rocky Mountains](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/235206098_A_Regional_Guidebook_for_Applying_the_Hydrogeomorphic_Approach_to_Assessing_Wetland_Functions_of_Riverine_Floodplains_in_the_Northern_Rocky_Mountains)
- Hauer FR, Lamberti GA. 2007. Methods in stream ecology. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Burlington (MA): Academic Press, Elsevier Inc.
- Hawkins CP, Olson JR, Hill RA. 2010. The reference condition: predicting benchmarks for ecological and water-quality assessments. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society*. 29(1):312-343.
- Henderson JE. 1986. Environmental designs for streambank protection projects. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association Water Resources Bulletin*. 22(4):549- 558.
- Hey RD. 2006. Fluvial geomorphological methodology for natural stable channel design. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 42(2):357-374.
- Hickman T, Raleigh RF. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: Cutthroat trout. FWS/OBS-82/10.5. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service. <https://www.nwrc.usgs.gov/wdb/pub/hsi/hsi-005.pdf>
- House R. 1995. Temporal variation in abundance of an isolated population of cutthroat trout in western Oregon. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 15:33-41.
- Hunt RL. 1976. A long-term evaluation of trout habitat development and its relation to improving management-related research. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*. 105(3):361-364.
- Hunt RL. 1988. A compendium of 45 trout stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin during 1953-1985. Technical Bulletin No. 162. Madison (WI): Wisconsin

- Department of Natural Resources. <https://dnr.wi.gov/files/PDF/pubs/ss/SS0162.pdf>
- Hupp CR. 1992. Riparian vegetation recovery patterns following stream channelization: A geomorphic perspective. *Ecology*. 73(4):1209-1226.
- Hussain QA, Pandit AK. 2012. Macroinvertebrate in streams: A review of some ecological factors. *International Journal of Fisheries and Aquaculture*. 4(7):114-123.
- Imholt C, Malcolm IA, Bacon PJ, Gibbins CN, Soulsby C, Miles M, Fryer RJ. 2011. Does diurnal temperature variability affect growth in juvenile Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*? *Journal of Fish Biology*. 78(2):436-448.
- Johnson B, Beardsley M, Doran J. 2013. Functional Assessment of Colorado Wetlands (FACWet) Method. User Manual - version 3.0. <https://www.codot.gov/programs/environmental/wetlands/assets/facwet-version-3-manual>
- Jones GP, Walford GM. 1995. Major riparian vegetation types of eastern Wyoming. A report for the Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division. Laramie (WY): Unpublished report prepared by Wyoming Natural Diversity Database.
- Jones GP, Smith RS, Fertig WF, Keinath DA, Neighbours ML, Welp LA, Beauvais GP. 2001. Rare species and riparian vegetation of the snake river basin in Wyoming. Prepared for the US Bureau of Reclamation. Laramie (WY): Wyoming Natural Diversity Database, University of Wyoming. <https://www.uwyo.edu/wyndd/files/docs/reports/wynddreports/u01jon02wyus.pdf>
- Kappesser GB. 2002. A riffle stability index to evaluate sediment loading to streams. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 38(4):1069-1081. <https://training.fws.gov/courses/CSP/CSP3200/resources/riffle-stability-index.pdf>
- Kasprak A, Hough-Snee N, Beechie T, Bouwes N, Brierley G, Camp R, Fryirs K, Imaki H, Jensen M, O'Brien G, et al. 2016. The blurred line between form and process: A comparison of stream channel classification frameworks. *PLoS ONE* 11(3): e0150293. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0150293>
- Kaufmann PR, Levine P, Robison EG, Seeliger C, Peck DV. 1999. Quantifying physical habitat in wadeable streams. EPA/620/R-99/003. Washington (DC): US. Environmental Protection Agency. <https://archive.epa.gov/emap/archive-emap/web/pdf/phyhab.pdf>
- Kaufmann PR, Hughes RM. 2006. Geomorphic anthropogenic influences on fish and amphibians in pacific northwest coastal streams. *American Fisheries Society Symposium*. 48:429-455.
- Kittel G, VanWie E, Damm M, Rondeau R, Kettler S, McMullen A, Sanderson J. 1999. A classification of riparian wetland plant associations of Colorado: A users guide to the classification project. Fort Collins (CO): Colorado Natural Heritage Program, Colorado State University. <http://www.cnhp.colostate.edu/download/documents/1999/UserGuide.PDF>
- Kleindl W, Rains M, Marshall L, Hauer F. 2015. Fire and flood expand the floodplain shifting

- habitat mosaic concept. *Freshwater Science*. 34(4):1366.
- Knighton D. 1998. *Fluvial forms and processes: A new perspective*. New York (NY): Oxford University Press Inc.
- Kondratieff MC, Richer EE. 2018. *Stream habitat investigations and assistance*. Federal Aid Project F-161-R24. Fort Collins (CO): Colorado Parks & Wildlife Aquatic Research Station.  
[https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/Research/Aquatic/pdf/Publications/2018\\_Stream\\_Habitat\\_Investigations\\_and\\_Assistance.pdf](https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/Research/Aquatic/pdf/Publications/2018_Stream_Habitat_Investigations_and_Assistance.pdf)
- Kroes DE, Hupp CR. 2010. The effect of channelization on floodplain sediment deposition and subsidence along the Pocomoke River, Maryland. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 46(4):686-699.
- Landers D, Fernald A, Andrus C. 2002. Off-channel habitats. In: Hulse D, Gregory S, Baker J, editors. *Willamette River Basin Atlas*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Corvallis (OR): Oregon State University Press.
- Langbein WB, Leopold LB. 1966. River meanders – Theory of minimum variance. *Geological Survey Professional Paper 422-H*. Washington (DC): US Department of Interior.  
<https://pubs.usgs.gov/pp/0422h/report.pdf>
- Laub BG, Baker DW, Bledsoe BP, Palmer MA. 2012. Range of variability of channel complexity in urban, restored and forested reference streams. *Freshwater Biology*. 57(5):1076- 1095.
- Leopold LB, Wolman MG. 1957. River channel patterns – braided, meandering and straight. *United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 282B*.  
<https://pubs.er.usgs.gov/publication/pp282B>
- Leopold LB, Wolman MG, Miller JP. 1992. *Fluvial processes in geomorphology*. New York (NY): Dover Publications, Inc.
- Louhi P, Mäki-Petäys A, Erkinaro J. 2008. Spawning habitat of atlantic salmon and brown trout: general criteria and intragravel factors. *River Research and Applications*. 24(3):330-339.
- Macfarlane WW, Gilbert JT, Jensen ML, Gilbert JD, Hough-Snee N, McHugh PA, Wheaton JM, Bennett SN. 2017. Riparian vegetation as an indicator of riparian condition: Detecting departures from historic condition across the North American West. *Journal of Environmental Management*. 202(2):447-460.
- Mathews R, Richter BD. 2007. Applications of the indicators of hydrologic alteration software in environmental flow setting. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 43(6):1400-1413.
- Mathon BR, Rizzo DM, Kline M, Alexander G, Fiske S, Langdon R, Stevens L. 2013. Assessing linkages in stream habitat, geomorphic condition, and biological integrity using a generalized regression neural network. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 49(2):415-430.
- Mayer PM, Reynolds SK, McCutchen MD, Canfield TJ. 2005. Riparian buffer width, vegetative

- cover, and nitrogen removal effectiveness: A review of current science and regulations. EPA/600/R-05/118. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency. <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2019-02/documents/riparian-buffer-width-2005.pdf>
- McMillan M, Liebens J, Metcalf C. 2017. Evaluating the BANCS streambank erosion framework on the Northern Gulf of Mexico Coastal Plain. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 53(6):1393-1408. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1752-1688.12572>
- Merritt DM, Manning ME, Hough-Snee N, editors. 2017. *The National Riparian Core Protocol: A riparian vegetation monitoring protocol for wadeable streams of the conterminous United States*. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-367. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station. [https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_series/rmrs/gtr/rmrs\\_gtr367.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_series/rmrs/gtr/rmrs_gtr367.pdf)
- Minnesota Stream Quantification Tool Steering Committee (MNSQT SC). 2019. *Minnesota Stream Quantification Tool and Debit Calculator (MNSQT) User Manual, Version 1.0*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds (Contract # EP-C-17-001), Washington, D.C.
- Montgomery DR, Buffington JM. 1993. Channel classification, prediction of channel response, and assessment of channel condition (p. 84). Seattle: University of Washington.
- Moody T, Wirtanen M, Yard SN. 2003. Regional relationships for bankfull stage in natural channel of the Arid Southwest. Flagstaff (AZ): Natural Channel Design, Inc. <http://naturalchanneldesign.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/01/Arid-SW-Report.pdf>
- Mulvihill CI, Baldigo BP. 2012. Optimizing bankfull discharge and hydraulic geometry relations for streams in New York State. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 48(3):449-463.
- Nadeau T-L, Trowbridge C, Hicks D, Coulombe R. 2018. A scientific rationale in support of the stream function assessment method for Oregon. Version 1.0. EPA 910-S-18-001. Salem (OR): Oregon Department of State Lands. Seattle (WA): US Environmental Protection Agency, Region 10. <http://oe.oregonexplorer.info/externalcontent/SFAM/SFAMRationaleV1.0.pdf>
- Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). 1986. *Urban hydrology for small watersheds*. Technical Release No. 55. Washington (DC): US Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service, Conservation Engineering Division. [https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1044171.pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1044171.pdf)
- Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). 2007. *National engineering handbook part 654, stream restoration design*. Washington (DC): US Department of Agriculture NRCS. <https://directives.sc.egov.usda.gov/OpenNonWebContent.aspx?content=17807.wba>
- Nehring RB. 1979. *Evaluation of instream flow methods and determination of water quantity needs for streams in the state of Colorado*. USFWS Contract No 14 16 0006 78 909. Fort Collins (CO): Colorado Division of Wildlife.

<http://hermes.cde.state.co.us/drupal/islandora/object/co%3A26431>

- Novak R, Kennen JG, Abele RW, Baschon CF, Carlisle DM, Dlugolecki L, Flotermersch JE, Ford P, Fowler J, Galer R, et al. 2015. Draft: EPA-USGS Technical Report: Protecting aquatic life from effects of hydrologic alteration. US Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2015-5160. US Environmental Protection Agency Report 822-P-15-002.
- Ock, G., Gaeuman, D., McSloy, J., Kondolf, G.M. (2015) Ecological functions of restored gravel bars, the Trinity River, California. *Ecological Engineering* 83:49-60
- Olden JD, Poff NL. 2003. Redundancy and the choice of hydrologic indices for characterizing streamflow regimes. *River Research and Applications*. 19(2):101-121.
- Pennsylvania Department of Environmental Protection (PADEP). 2014. Pennsylvania Function Based Aquatic Resource Compensation Protocol. Draft Version 1.0. : 310-2137-001. Bureau of Waterways Engineering and Wetlands.
- Pierce R, Podner C, Carim K. 2013. Response of wild trout to stream restoration over two decades in the Blackfoot River basin, Montana. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*. 142(1):68-81.
- Pitlick J, Steeter MMV. 1998. Geomorphology and endangered fish habitats of the upper Colorado River: Linking sediment transport to habitat maintenance. *Water Resource Research*. 34(2):303-316.  
<https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1029/97WR02684>
- Poff NL, Allan DA, Bain MB, Karr JR, Prestegard KL, Richter BD, Sparks RE, Stromberg JC. 1997. The natural flow regime: A paradigm for river conservation and restoration. *BioScience*. 47(11):769-784. [https://www.fs.fed.us/stream/Poffetal\\_1997.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/stream/Poffetal_1997.pdf)
- Poff NL, Richter BD, Arthington AH, Bunn SE, Naiman RJ, Kendy E, Acreman M, Apse C, Bledsoe BP, Freeman MC, et al. 2010. The ecological limits of hydrologic alteration (ELOHA): a new framework for developing regional flow standards. *Freshwater Biology*. Special Issue: Environmental Flows: Science and Management. 55(1):147-170.
- Poff NL, Zimmerman JKH. 2010. Ecological responses to altered flow regimes: a literature review to inform the science and management of environmental flows. *Freshwater Biology*. Special Issue: Environmental Flows: Science and Management. 55(1):194-205.
- Polvi LE, Wohl EE, Merritt DM. 2011. Geomorphic and process domain controls on riparian zones in the Colorado Front Range. *Geomorphology*. 125(4):504-516.
- Price K. 2011. Effects of watershed topography, soils, land use, and climate on baseflow hydrology in humid regions: A review. *Progress in Physical Geography: Earth and Environment*. 35(4): 465-492. <http://coweeta.uga.edu/publications/10645.pdf>
- Prichard D, Berg F, Hagenbuck W, Krapf R, Leinard R, Leonard S, Manning M, Noble, C, Staats, J. 1999, Revised 2003. *Riparian Area Management. A User Guide to Assessing Proper Functioning Condition and Supporting Science for Lentic Areas*. Technical Reference

- 1737-16. <https://www.blm.gov/or/programs/nrst/files/Final%20TR%201737-16%20.pdf>
- Raleigh RF. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: Brook trout. US Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS-82/10.24. Lafayette (LA): US Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Research Center. <https://www.nwrc.usgs.gov/wdb/pub/hsi/hsi-024.pdf>
- Raleigh RF, Hickman T, Solomon RC, Nelson PC. 1984. Habitat suitability information: Rainbow trout. US Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS-82/10.60. Lafayette (LA): US Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Research Center. [https://www.fwspubs.org/doi/suppl/10.3996/022015-JFWM-011/suppl\\_file/022015-jfwm-011.s8.pdf](https://www.fwspubs.org/doi/suppl/10.3996/022015-JFWM-011/suppl_file/022015-jfwm-011.s8.pdf)
- Raleigh RF, Zuckerman LD, Nelson PC. 1986. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: Brown trout. Revised. S Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(10.124). Lafayette (LA): US Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Research Center. <https://www.nwrc.usgs.gov/wdb/pub/hsi/hsi-124.pdf>
- Reid D, Church M. 2015. Geomorphic and ecological consequences of riprap placement in river systems. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 51(4):1043-1059.
- Richardson DM, Holmes PM, Esler KJ, Galatowitsch SM, Stromberg JC, Kirkman SP, Pysek P, Hobbs RJ. 2007. Riparian vegetation: degradation, alien plant invasions, and restoration prospects. *Diversity Distributions*. 13(1):126-139.
- Richer EE, Kondratieff MC, Swigle BD. 2015. Post-flood recovery assessment and stream restoration guidelines for the Colorado Front Range. Fort Collins (CO): Colorado Parks and Wildlife. <https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/Research/Aquatic/pdf/PostFloodAssessmentandGuidelines.pdf>
- Richter BD, Davis MM, Apse C, Konrad C. 2012. A presumptive standard for environmental flow protection. *River Research and Applications*. 28(8):1312-21.
- Richter BD, Baumgartner JV, Powell J, Braun DP. 1996. A method for assessing hydrologic alteration within ecosystems. *Conservation Biology*. 10(4):1163-1174.
- Ries III KG, Steeves PA, Coles JD, Rea AH, Stewart DW. 2004. StreamStats: A U.S. Geological Survey web application for stream information. USGS Fact Sheet FS 2004-3115. Washington (DC): U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey. <https://pubs.usgs.gov/fs/2004/3115/report.pdf>
- Roni P, Beechie T, editors. 2013. Stream and watershed restoration: A guide to restoring riverine processes and habitats. 1<sup>st</sup> ed. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
- Rosgen DL. 1996. Applied river morphology. Fort Collins (CO): Wildland Hydrology Books.
- Rosgen DL. 2006. A watershed assessment for river stability and sediment supply (WARSSS). Fort Collins (CO): Wildland Hydrology Books.
- Rosgen DL. 2008. River stability field guide. Fort Collins (CO): Wildland Hydrology Books.
- Rosgen DL. 2009. Watershed assessment of river stability and sediment supply

- (WARSSS). 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Fort Collins (CO): Wildland Hydrology Books.
- Rosgen D. 2014. River stability field guide. 2nd ed. Fort Collins (CO): Wildland Hydrology Books.
- Ryan, S. 1997. Morphological response of subalpine streams to transbasin flow diversion. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 33(4):839-854.
- Salo JA, Theobald DM, Brown TC. 2016. Evaluation of methods for delineating riparian zones in a semi-arid montane watershed. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 52(3):632-647.  
[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_journals/2016/rmrs\\_2016\\_salo\\_j001.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_journals/2016/rmrs_2016_salo_j001.pdf)
- Sanderson JS, Rowan N, Wilding T, Bledsoe BP, Miller WJ, Poff NL. 2012. Getting to scale with environmental flow assessment: the watershed flow evaluation tool. *River Research and Applications*. 28(9):1369-1377.
- Schoof R. 1980. Environmental impact of channel modification. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association Water Resources Bulletin*. 16(4):697-701.
- Schueler TR, Fraley-McNeal L, Cappiella K. 2009. Is impervious cover still important? Review of recent research. *Journal of Hydrologic Engineering*. 14(4):309-315.
- Shuler SW, Nehring RB. 1993. Using the physical habitat simulation model to evaluate a stream enhancement project. *Rivers*. 4(3):175-193.
- Schumm SA. 1985. Patterns of alluvial rivers. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences*.13:5-27.
- Scott ML, Lines GC, Auble GT. 2000. Channel incision and patterns of cottonwood stress and mortality along the Mojave River, California. *Journal of Arid Environments*. 44(4):399-414.
- Shafroth PB, Stromberg JC, Patten DT. 2002. Riparian vegetation response to altered disturbance and stress regimes. *Ecological Applications* 12(1): 107-123.
- Shields Jr FD, Lizotte Jr RE, Knight SS, Cooper CM, Wilcox D. 2010. The stream channel incision syndrome and water quality. *Ecological Engineering*. 36(1):78-90.
- Simon A, Rinaldi M. 2006. Disturbance, stream incision, and channel evolution: The roles of excess transport capacity and boundary materials in the controlling channel response. *Geomorphology*. 79(3-4):361-383.
- Simon A, Pollen-Bankhead N, Mahacek V, Langendoen E. 2009. Quantifying reductions of mass-failure frequency and sediment loadings from streambanks using toe protection and other means: Lake Tahoe, United States. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* . 45(1):170-186.
- Somerville DE, Pruitt BA. 2004. Physical stream assessment: A review of selected protocols for use in the Clean Water Act Section 404 Regulatory Program. Order No. 3W-0503-NATX. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and

- Watersheds, Wetlands Division. [https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-08/documents/physical\\_stream\\_assessment\\_0.pdf](https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-08/documents/physical_stream_assessment_0.pdf)
- Somerville DE. 2010. Stream assessment and mitigation protocols: A review of commonalities and differences. EPA 843-S-12-003. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds. [https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-07/documents/stream\\_protocols\\_2010.pdf](https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-07/documents/stream_protocols_2010.pdf)
- Sommer TR, Batham W, Nobriga ML, Harrell WC, Kimmerer WJ. 2001. Floodplain rearing of juvenile chinook salmon: Evidence of enhanced growth and survival. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 58(2):325-33. [https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water\\_issues/programs/bay\\_delta/california\\_waterfix/exhibits/docs/CDWA%20et%20al/SDWA%20180%20Floodplain%20rearing%20of%20juvenile%20chinook%20salmon%20evidence%20of%20enhanced%20growth%20and%20survival%20.pdf](https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/california_waterfix/exhibits/docs/CDWA%20et%20al/SDWA%20180%20Floodplain%20rearing%20of%20juvenile%20chinook%20salmon%20evidence%20of%20enhanced%20growth%20and%20survival%20.pdf)
- Steele EA, Fullerton A. 2017. Thermal networks – Do you really mean it? The Technical Newsletter of the National Stream and Aquatic Ecology Center. November 2017. Fort Collins (CO): US Department of Agriculture. <https://www.fs.fed.us/biology/nsaec/assets/streamnotes2017-11.pdf>
- Stein ED, Cover MR, Elizabeth Fetscher A, O'Reilly C, Guardado R, Solek CW. 2013. Reach-scale geomorphic and biological effects of localized streambank armoring. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 49(4):780-792.
- Steinman AD, Lamberti GA, Leavitt PR, Uzarski DG. 2017. Biomass and pigments of benthic algae. In: Hauer FR, Lamberti GA, editors. *Methods in Stream Ecology*. Volume 1. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Associated Press. p. 223-241.
- Stoddard JL, Larsen DP, Hawkins CP, Johnson RK, Norris RH. 2006. Setting expectations for the ecological condition of streams: the concept of reference condition. *Ecological Applications*. 16(4):1267-1276.
- Stoddard JL, Herlihy AT, Peck DV, Hughes RH, Whittier TR, Tarquinio E. 2008. A process for creating multimetric indices for large-scale aquatic surveys. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society*. 27(4):878-891.
- Sullivan SMP, Watzin MC 2009. Stream-floodplain connectivity and fish assemblage diversity in the Champlain Valley, Vermont, U.S.A. *Journal of Fish Biology*. 74(7):1394-1418.
- Suplee MW, Watson V, Teply M, McKee H. 2009. How green is too green? Public opinion of what constitutes undesirable algae levels in streams. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*. 45(1):123-140.
- Colorado Parks and Wildlife. 2015. State wildlife action plan (SWAP). [https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO\\_SWAP\\_FULLVERSION.pdf](https://cpw.state.co.us/Documents/WildlifeSpecies/SWAP/CO_SWAP_FULLVERSION.pdf)
- Sweeney BW, Newbold JD. 2014. Streamside forest buffer width needed to protect stream water quality, habitat, and organisms: A literature review. *Journal of the American Water*

Resources Association. 50(3): 560-584.

Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation (TDEC). 2018. Tennessee Stream Quantification Tool: Spreadsheet User Manual. TN SQT v1.0. Nashville (TN): Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation.

[https://www.tn.gov/content/dam/tn/environment/water/documents/ppo\\_water\\_arap-tn-sqt-spreadsheet-user-manual-DRAFT.PDF](https://www.tn.gov/content/dam/tn/environment/water/documents/ppo_water_arap-tn-sqt-spreadsheet-user-manual-DRAFT.PDF)

Torgersen CE, Ebersole JL, Keenan DM. 2012. Primer for identifying cold-water refuges to protect and restore thermal diversity in riverine landscapes. EPA 910-C-12-001. Seattle (WA): US EPA Water Division, Office of Water and Watersheds.

[http://faculty.washington.edu/cet6/pub/Torgersen\\_etal\\_2012\\_cold\\_water\\_refuges.pdf](http://faculty.washington.edu/cet6/pub/Torgersen_etal_2012_cold_water_refuges.pdf)

Torizzo M, Pitlick J. 2004. Magnitude-frequency of bed load transport in mountain streams in Colorado. Journal of Hydrology. 290(1-2):137-151.

UDFCD. 2011. Urban storm drainage criteria manual: Volume 3 stormwater quality. Denver (CO): Urban Drainage and Flood Control District. [https://udfcd.org/wp-content/uploads/uploads/vol3%20criteria%20manual/01\\_USDCM%20Volume%203.pdf](https://udfcd.org/wp-content/uploads/uploads/vol3%20criteria%20manual/01_USDCM%20Volume%203.pdf)

UDFCD, 2016. Urban storm drainage criteria manual: Volume 1 Management, Hydrology, and Hydraulics. Denver (CO): Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

[https://udfcd.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/USDCM\\_Volume\\_1\\_August\\_2018.pdf](https://udfcd.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/USDCM_Volume_1_August_2018.pdf)

United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 1987. Corps of Engineers wetland delineation manual. Technical Report Y-87-1. C Vicksburg (MS): US Army Corps of Engineers Waterways Experiment Station, Environmental Laboratory.

<https://www.lrh.usace.army.mil/Portals/38/docs/USACE%2087%20Wetland%20Delineation%20Manual.pdf>

USACE. 2008a. Compensatory Mitigation for Losses of Aquatic Resources. 73 FR 19670. <https://www.nap.usace.army.mil/Portals/39/docs/regulatory/regs/33cfr332.pdf>

USACE. 2008b. Regional supplement to the Corps of Engineers wetland delineation manual: Arid West Region. Version 2.0. ERDC/EL TR-08-28. Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center.

[https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046489.pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046489.pdf)

USACE. 2010a. Regional supplement to the Corps of Engineers wetland delineation manual: Great Plains Region. Version 2.0. ERDC/EL TR-10-1. Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center.

[https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046493.pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046493.pdf)

USACE. 2010b. Regional supplement to the Corps of Engineers wetland delineation manual: Western Mountains, Valleys, and Coast Region. Version 2.0. ERDC/EL TR-10-3. Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center.

[https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046494.pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/stelprdb1046494.pdf)

USACE. 2018a. Scientific support for the Wyoming stream quantification tool. Version 1.0. Cheyenne (WY): USACE Omaha District, Wyoming Regulatory Office.

<https://usace.contentdm.oclc.org/digital/api/collection/p266001coll1/id/8062/download>

- USACE. 2018b. Wyoming stream quantification tool (WSQT) user manual and spreadsheet. Version 1.0. Cheyenne (WY): USACE Omaha District, Wyoming Regulatory Office. <https://usace.contentdm.oclc.org/digital/collection/p16021coll11/id/2728/>
- USACE. 2018c. Georgia interim stream quantification tool and user manual. In: 2018 Standard Operating Procedures for Compensatory Mitigation. Burford (GA): USACE Savannah District, Georgia Regulatory Branch. <https://www.sas.usace.army.mil/Portals/61/docs/Regulatory/Mitigation%20Documents/SOP.pdf?ver=2018-07-03-144058-600>
- USACE. 2018d. Wyoming Stream Mitigation Procedure Version 2 (WSMP v2). USACE Omaha District, Wyoming Regulatory Office. <https://usace.contentdm.oclc.org/digital/collection/p16021coll11/id/2729/>
- USACE. 2020. Colorado Mitigation Procedures (COMP). USACE Albuquerque District, Pueblo Regulatory Office.
- USBR and ERDC. 2016. National large wood manual: Assessment, planning, design, and maintenance of large wood in fluvial ecosystems: restoring process, function, and structure. Boise (ID): US Bureau of Reclamation. Vicksburg (MS): US Army Engineer Research and Development Center. <https://coloradoewp.com/sites/coloradoewp.com/files/document/pdf/2016%20National%20Large%20Wood%20Manual.pdf>
- USDA Forest Service. 2007. Analyzing pebble count data collected by size classes [Microsoft Excel spreadsheet]. USDA Forest Service National Stream & Aquatic Ecology Center. <https://www.fs.fed.us/biology/nsaec/index.html>
- USDA and NRCS. 2007. National Engineering Handbook Part 630 Hydrology. Chapter 7: Hydrologic Soil Groups. <https://directives.sc.egov.usda.gov/OpenNonWebContent.aspx?content=17757.wba>
- USDOI. 2011. Riparian area management: Multiple indicator monitoring (MIM) of stream channels and streamside vegetation. Technical Reference 1737-23. BLM/OC/ST-10/003+1737+REV. Denver (CO): Bureau of Land Management, National Operations Center.
- USEPA. 1986. Ambient water quality criteria for dissolved oxygen. EPA 440/5-86-003. Washington (DC): Office of Water Regulations and Standards, Criteria and Standards Division. <https://www3.epa.gov/region1/npdes/merrimackstation/pdfs/ar/AR-1236.pdf>
- USEPA. 2003. A summary of general assessment factors for evaluating the quality of scientific and technical information. EPA 100/B-03/001. Washington (DC): Science Policy Council, US Environmental Protection Agency. <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-01/documents/assess2.pdf>
- USEPA. 2005. Protecting water quality from agricultural runoff. EPA 841-F-05-001. Washington

- (DC): US EPA Nonpoint Source Control Branch.  
<https://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPDF.cgi/P10039OH.PDF?Dockey=P10039OH.PDF>
- USEPA. 2009. National river and streams assessment field operations manual. EPA-841-B-07-009. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds, Office of Research and Development.
- USEPA. 2012. Identifying and Protecting Healthy Watersheds: Concepts, Assessments, and Management Approaches. <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2015-10/documents/hwi-watersheds-complete.pdf>
- USEPA. 2014. Best practices for continuous monitoring of temperature and flow in Wadeable streams. EPA/600/R-13/170F. Washington (DC): Global Change Research Program, National Center for Environmental Assessment.  
[https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_other/rmrs\\_2014\\_stamp\\_j001.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_other/rmrs_2014_stamp_j001.pdf)
- USEPA. 2016. National river and streams assessment 2008-2009 technical report. Washington (DC): US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds, Office of Research and Development.  
[https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2016-03/documents/nrsa\\_08\\_09\\_technical\\_appendix\\_03082016.pdf](https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2016-03/documents/nrsa_08_09_technical_appendix_03082016.pdf)
- USFWS. 2009. A system for mapping riparian areas in the western United States. Arlington (VA): USFWS Division of Habitat and Resource Conservation, Branch of Resource and Mapping Support. <https://www.fws.gov/wetlands/documents/A-System-for-Mapping-Riparian-Areas-In-The-Western-United-States-2009.pdf>
- Walford GM. 1996. Statewide classification of riparian and wetland dominance types and plant communities - Bighorn Basin segment. A report submitted to the Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division. Cooperative Agreement #WET04, Grant #CD998066-01-0. Laramie (WY): Wyoming Natural Diversity Database.
- Walford G, Jones G, Fertig W, Mellman-Brown S, Houston KE. 2001. Riparian and wetland plant community types of the Shoshone National Forest. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-85. Odgen (UT): USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.
- Walsh JC, Roy AH, Feminella JW, Cottingham PD, Groffman PM, Morgan RP. 2005. The urban stream syndrome: Current knowledge and the search for a cure. *Freshwater Science*. 24(3):706-723.
- Wesche TA, Goertler CM, Hubert WA. 1987. Modified habitat suitability index model for brown trout in southeastern Wyoming. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 7:232-237.
- WDEQ. 2018. Manual of standard operating procedures for sample collection and analysis. Cheyenne (WY): Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality, Water Quality Division, Watershed Program. <http://deq.wyoming.gov/wqd/qaqc/resources/manual/>
- Welch EB, Jacoby JM, Horner RR, Seeley MR. 1988. Nuisance biomass levels of periphytic

- algae in streams. *Hydrobiologia*. 157(2):161-168.
- West E, Ruark G. 2004. Historical evidence of riparian forests in the Great Plains and how that knowledge can aid with restoration and management. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*. 59(5):105A-110A.
- Whiteway SL, Biron PM, Zimmermann A, Venter O, Grant JWA. 2010. Do in-stream restoration structures enhance salmonid abundance? A meta-analysis. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 67(5):831-41.
- Whittaker JG. 1987. Sediment transport in step-pool streams. In: Thorne CR, Bathurst, JC, Hey RD, editors. *Sediment Transport in Gravel-Bed Rivers*. New York (NY): John Wiley. p.545-579.
- Wilding TK, Bledsoe B, Poff NL, Sanderson J. 2014. Predicting habitat response to flow using generalized habitat models for trout in Rocky Mountain streams. *River Research and Applications*. 30(7):805-824.
- Winter TC, Judson WH, Franke OL, Alley WM. 1998. Groundwater and surface water a single resource. Circular 1139. Denver (CO): US Geological Survey.  
<https://pubs.er.usgs.gov/publication/cir1139>
- Winward AH. 2000. Monitoring the vegetation resources in riparian areas. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-47. Ogden (UT): U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station. [https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs\\_gtr047.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs/rmrs_gtr047.pdf)
- Wohl EE. 2000. Mountain rivers. *Water Resources Monographs* 14. Washington (DC): American Geophysical Union.
- Wohl E. 2004. *Disconnected rivers: Linking rivers to landscapes*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press.
- Wohl EE, Cenderelli DA, Dwire KA, Ryan-Burkett SE, Young MK, Fausch KD. 2010. Large in-stream wood studies: a call for common metrics. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. 35:618-625. [https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_other/rmrs\\_2010\\_wohl\\_e001.pdf](https://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_other/rmrs_2010_wohl_e001.pdf)
- Wohl E, Beckman N. 2014. Controls on the longitudinal distribution of channel-spanning logjams in the Colorado Front Range, USA. *River Research and Applications*. 30(1):112- 131.
- Wohl E. 2011. Threshold-induced complex behavior of wood in mountain streams. *Geology*. 39(6):587-590.
- Wolman MG. 1954. A method of sampling coarse river-bed material. *Transactions of the American Geophysical Union*. 35(6):951-956.
- Wood PJ, Armitage PD. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediments in lotic environments. *Environmental Management*. 21(2):203-217.
- Youngblood AP, Padgett WG, Winward AH. 1985. Riparian community type classification of eastern Idaho - western Wyoming. R4-Ecol-85-01. Ogden (UT): US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Region.

Zorn TG, Seelbach PW, Rutherford ES, Wills TC, Cheng ST, Wiley MJ. 2008. A regional-scale habitat suitability model to assess the effects of flow reduction on fish assemblages in Michigan Streams. Research Report 2089. Ann Arbor (MI): Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division.

[https://www.michigan.gov/documents/dnr/RR2089\\_268570\\_7.pdf](https://www.michigan.gov/documents/dnr/RR2089_268570_7.pdf)

## **Appendix A: CSQT List of Metrics**

Functional Category	Functional Statement	Function-Based Parameters	Metric (Units)	Stratification		Threshold Index Values				Literature and data sources used to develop Reference Curves	Applicability		
				Type	Description	≠ 0.00	≠ 0.30	≠ 0.70	≠ 1.00				
Hydrology	Transport of water from the watershed to the channel and project reach.	Flow Alteration Module-Separate Routine outside of the reach condition assessment	Mean Annual Q - O/E	-	-	0.0 ≥ 2.0	*	*	*	0.9 - 1.1	Literature values from Richter et al.(2012), WSTT and CSQT SC.	Applicable in all streams.	
			Mean Sept Q- O/E	-	-	*	*	*	*			Applicable in perennial streams where September represents baseflow.	
			Mean Aug Q- O/E	-	-	*	*	*	*			Applicable in perennial streams where August represents baseflow.	
			Mean Jan Q- O/E	-	-	*	*	*	*			Applicable in perennial streams where January represents winter baseflow.	
			Mean annual peak daily Q- O/E	-	-	*	*	*	*			Applicable in all streams where daily flow data is available.	
			7-Day Minimum - O/E	-	-	*	*	*	*			Applicable in all perennial streams where daily flow data is available.	
Reach Hydrology and Hydraulics	Transport of water from the lateral drainage area. Transport of water in the channel, on the floodplain, and through sediments.	Reach Runoff ●	Land Use Coefficient	-	-	*	*	62	≤ 55	Literature values from NRCS, 1986.	Applicable in all streams. Additional testing is needed in all stream types.		
			Concentrated Flow Points	-	-	*	*	1.0	0.0	# Developed by WSTT and Stream Mechanics.	Applicable in all streams. Additional testing is needed in all stream types.		
		Baseflow Dynamics	Average Velocity (fps)	-	-	NA				1	Developed using literature values from Hickman and Raleigh 1982, Raleigh 1982, Raleigh et al. 1984, Raleigh et al. 1986, Wesche et al. 1987, Shuler and Nehring 1993.	Reference curves are applicable in coldwater streams only; reference curves for warmwater streams have not been developed yet.	
			Average Depth (ft)	Stream Temperature & Proposed Bankfull Width	CS-I MWF & CS-I; W < 20ft	0.2				1.5			
		Floodplain Connectivity ●	Bank Height Ratio (ft/ft) ●	Sediment Regime	Source and Response	*	1.5	*	*	1			Applicable in all streams. Additional testing is needed in intermittent/ ephemeral streams and braided or anastomosing systems.
					Transport	*	*	0.8	1				
			Entrenchment Ratio (ft/ft) ●	Reference Stream Type	C	*	2.0	2.4	≥ 4.2			# Literature values from Rosgen (2008), Harman et al. (2012) and data from the Wyoming Combined Geomorphic Reference Dataset.	Not applicable in naturally occurring canyon systems (e.g., F type streams) or braided (D) stream types.
					Cb	*	2.0	2.4	≥ 3.9				
					E	*	2.0	2.4	≥ 6.7				
					A or B	*	1.2	1.4	≥ 2.2				
Percent Side Channels (%)	Valley Type	Unconfined Alluvial Valleys	0	10	50	100			Literature values from Nadeua et al. (2018) and Stream Mechanics.	Applicable to all single-thread streams where side channels are a desirable end state for the project reach.			
		Confined Alluvial Valleys	0	5	25	50							
Geomorphology	Transport and storage of wood and sediment to create diverse bedforms and dynamic equilibrium.	Large Woody Debris	LWD Index (Dimensionless)	-	-	0	*	430	≥ 660	# Data collected by WGFD, WDEQ and WSTT.	Applicable to all streams with naturally forested catchment or riparian gallery forests. Additional data is needed to determine stratification.		
			# Pieces (#/100m)	-	-	0	*	13	≥ 28	# NRSA dataset (USEPA 2016) and data collected by WGFD and WSTT.			
		Lateral Migration ●	Greenline Stability Rating	-	-	< 2	5	7	≥ 9	# Literature values from Winward (2000).	Applicable in all streams statewide with slopes less than 4%.		
			Dominant BEH/NBS	-	-	H/VH, H/Ex, VH/VH, VH/Ex, Ex/M, Ex/H, Ex/VH, Ex/Ex	M/H, Ex/L, Ex/VL	-	BEH VL, L/VL, L/L, L/M, L/H, L/VH, M/VL	# Literature values from Rosgen (2014) and Harman et al. (2012).	Applicable to single-thread channels. For systems naturally in disequilibrium, like some braided streams, ephemeral channels and alluvial fans or other systems with naturally high rates of bank erosion, these metrics should not be assessed.		
			Percent Streambank Erosion (%)	-	-	≥ 75		10	≤ 5	# Literature values from Bims (1982).	Applicable only when armoring techniques are present or proposed in the project reach. Additional testing is needed in all stream types.		
		Bed Form Diversity ●	Pool Spacing Ratio ●	Reference Stream Type	C	≤ 3.0	*	3.7	4.0 - 6.0			Not applicable in natural bedrock systems, naturally occurring canyon systems (e.g., F type streams), ephemeral streams or braided (D) stream types. Reference curves developed using data from single-thread, perennial, gravel/cobble streams in the mountainous regions of Wyoming. Additional data would be useful to determine whether additional or modified reference curves are needed for basins and plains regions.	
					Cb	≥ 9.3	*	7.0	3.7 - 5.0				
					B & Ba	*	*	3.0	≤ 3.0				
					Bc	≥ 7.5	*	4.0	≤ 3.4				
					E	≤ 1.8	*	3.0	3.5 - 5				
						≥ 8.3	*	6.0	≥ 3.2				
		Percent Riffle (%) ●	Slope	S < 3%	1.0	*	2.2	39	50 - 60		Reference curves developed using data from single-thread, perennial, gravel/cobble streams in the mountainous regions of Wyoming. Additional data and testing would be useful to determine whether additional or modified reference curves are needed for basins and plains regions, in intermittent, ephemeral and braided systems or sand bed streams.		
				S ≥ 3%	*	*	69	60	68 - 78				
		Riparian Vegetation ●	Aggradation Ratio	Valley Type	Unconfined Alluvial	0	30	*	100	# Literature values from Rosgen (2014) and data from the Wyoming Geomorphic Reference Dataset.	Not applicable to multi-thread stream types (D & DA).		
Confined Alluvial, Colluvial, or Bedrock	0				60	*	100	# Developed by WSTT.					
Woody & Mountains or Basins	0				*	69	≥ 122						
Woody & Plains	0				*	69	76						
Herbaceous Vegetation Cover (%)	Cover Type	Herbaceous	≤ 34	*	73	≥ 120	# Data from the CNHP dataset (Kittel et al. 1999) and WSTT data.	Applicable to all streams. Additional testing is needed in all stream types.					
			Percent Native Cover (%) ●	-	-	65	91	100					
Physicochemical	Temperature and oxygen regulation; processing of organic matter and nutrients.	Temperature	Steam Temperature	CS-I (MWF)	≥ 21.20	-	-	< 21.20					
				CS-I	≥ 21.70	-	-	< 21.70					
				CS-II	≥ 23.90	-	-	< 23.90					
				WS-I	≥ 29.00	-	-	< 29.00					
				WS-II	≥ 28.60	-	-	< 28.60					
				WS-III	≥ 31.80	-	-	< 31.80					
		Mean Weekly Average Temp (MWAT) (°C)	Steam Temperature	CS-I (MWF)	*	≥ 16.90	*	≤ 13.80	Developed using data and guidance from CPW and CDPHE.	Applicable in all streams with baseflow extending through August.			
				CS-I	*	≥ 17.00	*	≤ 15.72					
				CS-II	*	≥ 18.30	*	≤ 16.56					
				WS-I	*	≥ 24.20	*	≤ 20.85					
Dissolved Oxygen	DO Concentration (mg/L)	-	WS-II	*	≥ 27.50	*	≤ 22.50						
			WS-III	*	≥ 28.70	*	≤ 25.90						
Nutrients	Chlorophyll α (mg/m <sup>2</sup> )	Biotype	1, 2	*	53	27	< 13	# Developed by WSTT.	Applicable in most streams where baseflow extends through August except those with consistently turbid water. Additional testing is needed in sand bed streams.				
			3	≥ 150	117	29	≤ 16						
Biology	Biodiversity and life histories of aquatic and riparian animal life.	Macroinvertebrates	CO MMI	Biotype	1	0	35	45	≥ 57	Literature values from CDPHE (2017).	Applicable in all Wadeable streams when standing or flowing water is present during the index period. In non-perennial streams, spatial and interannual variability may be greater, and sampling may have more limited repeatability. The thresholds may not be representative in rivers with watershed areas >2,700 mi <sup>2</sup> in the South Platte River, Arkansas River, Purgatoire River, and Rio Grande River basins.		
					2	0	41	48	≥ 63				
					3	0	30	42	≥ 52				
		Fish	Number Native Fish Species (% of expected)	-	0	*	80	100	# Developed by Wyoming Game and Fish, metrics were modified for Colorado with input from CPW.	Applicable in all streams statewide, except naturally fishless streams.			
SGEN Absent Score	-				-	≥ 3	2	1	0	# Developed by Wyoming Game and Fish and WSTT, stratification was modified for Colorado with input from CPW; and evaluated using data from Binns (1999)	Applicable in coldwater streams. Certain species or age classes should be excluded from biomass estimates where there are stocking efforts within the watershed.		
Wild Trout Biomass (% Change)	Stream Productivity Class	-	High	< 5	5	25	≥ 40						
			Moderate	< 10	10	50	≥ 80						
Low	< 15	15	75	≥ 119									

\* Threshold Index Values were not assigned to generate the reference curve

# Reference curves are same as WSQT v1.01

● Basic Assessment recommended elements